

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

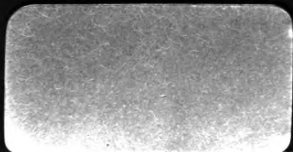
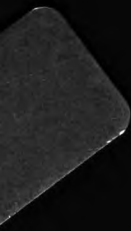
Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



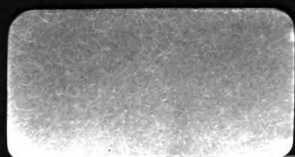
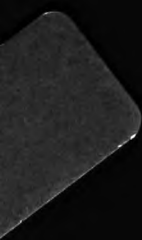


1919









Digitized by Google





# THE RIFLE BRIGADE CHRONICLE FOR 1919.

(THIRTIETH YEAR.)



COMPILED AND EDITED

BY

COLONEL WILLOUGHBY VERNER,  
LATE RIFLE BRIGADE.

London:

JOHN BALE, SONS & DANIELSSON, LTD.  
OXFORD HOUSE,  
83-91, GREAT TITCHFIELD STREET, OXFORD STREET, W.

1920.

VA  
600  
R56  
A32  
1919

JOHN BALE, SONS AND DANIELSSON, LTD.  
83-91, GREAT TITCHFIELD STREET, OXFORD STREET,  
LONDON, W.

## CONTENTS.

### WAR-RECORD OF THE REGULAR BATTALIONS, 1916, 1917 and 1918.

	PAGE
REFERENCE MAPS TO THE AREA DEALT WITH IN THE WAR RECORDS ..	vii
WAR-RECORD OF 1ST BATTALION, 1916 .. .. .	1
"      "      "      1917 .. .. .	20
"      "      "      1918 .. .. .	52
WAR-RECORD OF 2ND BATTALION, 1916 .. .. .	97
"      "      "      1917 .. .. .	106
"      "      "      1918 .. .. .	118
WAR-RECORD OF 3RD BATTALION, 1916 .. .. .	130
"      "      "      1917 .. .. .	140
"      "      "      1918 .. .. .	158
WAR-RECORD OF 4TH BATTALION, 1916 .. .. .	173
"      "      "      1917 .. .. .	175
"      "      "      1918 .. .. .	177
— — — — —	
WAR-RECORDS OF (SERVICE) BATTALIONS, 1916-18 .. .. .	180

### BATTALION LETTERS TO THE EDITOR, 1919.

NOTE BY THE EDITOR .. .. .	181
1ST BATTALION, MESOPOTAMIA .. .. .	182
2ND BATTALION, ALDERSHOT .. .. .	188
3RD BATTALION, PORTSMOUTH .. .. .	200
4TH BATTALION, QUETTA .. .. .	207

SUMMARY OF SERVICES IN FRANCE AND BELGIUM OF THE 2ND BATTALION FROM NOVEMBER 1914 TO NOVEMBER 1918, BY MAJOR J. H. ALLDRIDGE	212
MEMORIAL SERVICE AT WESTMINSTER ABBEY .. .. .	215
THE REGIMENTAL HISTORY .. .. .	218
"A SHORT ACCOUNT OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE" .. .. .	229
THE RIFLE BRIGADE PLATOON IN MURMANSK .. .. .	232
ADVENTURES OF AN ADVANCE PARTY OF THE 4TH BATTALION 1919 ..	235
THE NEW ZEALAND RIFLE BRIGADE.. .. .	238



**REGIMENTAL RECORD, 1919.**

	PAGE
REGIMENTAL STATE, 1 JANUARY 1920 .. .. .	238
1ST BATTALION .. .. .	243
3RD AND 4TH BATTALIONS .. .. .	245
INCREASE AND DECREASE 1919 .. .. .	246
ROLL OF COMMANDING OFFICERS, ADJUTANTS AND QUARTERMASTERS 1919	247
OFFICERS ON STAFF OR EXTRA-REGIMENTALLY EMPLOYED 1919.. ..	248
STATIONS OF BATTALIONS, DECEMBER 1919 .. .. .	251
UNITS OF RIFLE BRIGADE FORMED SINCE 1914 AND SUBSEQUENT DISPOSAL	252
TRAINING RESERVE UNITS AFFILIATED AND SUBSEQUENT DISPOSAL ..	253
ROLL OF WARRANT OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS AND RIFLEMEN	
AWARDED SPECIAL DECORATIONS FOR GALLANT DEEDS DURING THE	
WAR:—	
BAR TO DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL .. .. .	254
DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL .. .. .	255
MILITARY CROSS .. .. .	259
BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL .. .. .	259
MILITARY MEDAL .. .. .	259
MERITORIOUS SERVICE MEDAL.. .. .	260
FOREIGN DECORATIONS .. .. .	260
ERRATA AND ADDENDA .. .. .	261

**SOME REGIMENTAL NOTES.**

THE COLONELS COMMANDANT .. .. .	264
MAJOR-GENERAL SIR L. V. SWAINE .. .. .	265
FIELD MARSHAL SIR H. H. WILSON, BART. .. .. .	265
MILITARY RACKETS CHAMPIONSHIP .. .. .	266
SOME INTERESTING PHOTOGRAPHS .. .. .	267
CONTRIBUTIONS TO THE "CHRONICLE" .. .. .	267
INCREASED COST OF "CHRONICLE" .. .. .	268
OFFICERS' ASSOCIATION .. .. .	269
ADDRESSES OF MEMBERS OF CLUB .. .. .	269
A FINAL APPEAL .. .. .	270

**OBITUARY.**

MAJOR-GENERAL A. A. A. KINLOCH, C.B... .. .	274
<b>M.</b> MAJOR C. F. BLACKETT .. .. .	275
<b>C.M.</b> COLONEL JOHN CLERK, C.S.I., C.V.O. .. .. .	275
C. E. PARKE, ESQ. .. .. .	276
SURGEON-MAJOR G. A. HUTTON .. .. .	277
COLONEL A. H. S. MONTGOMERY .. .. .	278
CAPTAIN C. H. G. M. CLARKE, M.V.O. .. .. .	281
CAPTAIN A. C. CAMPBELL .. .. .	281

# CONTENTS

v

	PAGE
MEMORIAL HEADSTONE TO THE LATE COLONEL A. MONTGOMERY (Roll of Subscribers) .. .. .	283
NOTICE TO CORRESPONDENTS .. .. .	284
KEY MAP TO SHEETS OF ORDNANCE MAPS REFERRED TO IN WAR RECORDS	285

---

## INDEX TO VOLUMES XXI TO XXX, *i.e.*, FOR THE YEARS 1910 TO 1919 INCLUSIVE SHOWING—

(a) INDEX TO CONTRIBUTORS .. .. .	287
(b) GENERAL INDEX .. .. .	289



## REFERENCE MAPS OF THE AREA DEALT WITH IN THE WAR-RECORDS.

THE best Map on which to follow out the *general* movements of Brigades and Divisions of our Armies engaged during the years 1914-1918 in Eastern France and Flanders is unquestionably the General Staff Map on a scale of 1 : 100,000 (about one and a half miles to one inch).

The whole area covered by our troops from Ypres in the north to the Marne in the south will be found in the eight sheets (Nos. 5A, 5, 11, 12, 17, 18, 21 and 22) drawn on this scale. These can be obtained from any of the authorized sellers of Ordnance Maps.

It is obvious however that, apart from the cost, it would be difficult to reproduce maps of this size for the CHRONICLE since owing to their number they would be most inconvenient to fold up and would inevitably get torn. For this reason the Editor was reluctantly compelled to abandon any idea of reproducing in the CHRONICLE any large scale maps for the War-Records of the Regiment.

In order however to assist readers of the Records to follow out the movements of the various Battalions, he has adopted the plan of giving in the text, from time to time, the number of the map sheet on which the movements of the troops can be studied.

The question arose as to what was the most suitable scale for such a purpose. Since it was clear that the map of 1 : 100,000 was on too small a scale, it became

necessary to select one of those on a larger scale. Those available were as follows :—

- (1) 1 : 10,000 or about  $6\frac{1}{2}$  inches to a mile.
- (2) 1 : 20,000 or about  $3\frac{1}{4}$  inches to a mile.
- (3) 1 : 40,000 or about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches to a mile.

To follow all the movements of Companies and platoons in trench warfare, the largest of these three scales (No. 1) would be necessary. But this map had to be ruled out for the simple reason that it would require some 150 sheets to cover the area of operations. No. 2, the next smaller scale (1 : 20,000) while giving adequate detail for following out ordinary military operations, had likewise to be ruled out, since some forty sheets would have been required. So it was that the Editor was regretfully obliged to fall back on the last of these maps (No. 3) namely, one on a scale of 1 : 40,000, or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches to a mile. On this scale (which it will be noted is 50 per cent. larger than that of our 1-inch British Ordnance Map) the area of operations can be studied with the aid of from six to a dozen maps.

In order to assist those who may wish to provide themselves with sheets of any particular area, a key-map, giving the numbers of the various sheets, will be found at p. 285 of *this volume*.

In the War-Records of the 1st Battalion for the year 1916 given in this volume,

Pages 1 to 7 have reference to sheet No. 57<sup>D</sup>.

„ 7 to 9 „ „ „ No. 28.

„ 10 „ „ „ No. 19.

„ 10 to 16 „ „ „ No. 57<sup>C</sup>.

After page 16, the reference to the sheets required will be found in leaded type at the ends of the paragraphs—thus : Map 57<sup>D</sup>.

# WAR-RECORD OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE, 1916-17-18.

(CONTINUED FROM *Chronicle* FOR 1918, PP. 10-202.)

---

## WAR-RECORD OF 1ST BATTALION. 1916.

ON 1 January we were relieved by the 1st Bn. Somerset Light Infantry and went into billets in Mesnil and Bois d'Aveluy. At 11.30 a.m. on the 4th, an intense bombardment of Hamel began; at 4.15 p.m. two Companies were ordered to stand by and at 4.40 p.m. a verbal message was received from the East Lancashire asking for two Companies to support them in Hamel. Just as "A" and "C" Companies were falling in this was cancelled by a written message and by 5.30 p.m. all was quiet. One Officer was sent to find out the situation from the O.C. East Lancashire and ultimately "A" Company was sent up after dark to assist this Battalion in repairing the damage done by the bombardment on the 5th.

Our guns retaliated and drew the enemy's fire on Mesnil. Lieutenant Thomas, R.A.M.C. and five other ranks were wounded and 2nd Lieutenant Volkers got concussion. "A" and "I" Company Headquarters received direct hits. In the evening we relieved the Somerset L.I. in the same trenches as before.

In a patrol encounter, Acting-Corporal Peto was



killed and three Riflemen were wounded. Except for some shelling on the 8th, the rest of the month was spent uneventfully.

6 February.—We were relieved by the 13th Bn. Royal Irish Rifles and went for one night into our old billets in Mesnil.

8.—The Battalion moved for one night to Varennes and from thence to Gezaincourt where we stayed training and cleaning up until the 17th, when "A" Company marched to billets in Canaples and "B" Company to Longuevillette, "C" and "I" Companies and Headquarters staying at Gezaincourt.

On 24 February we received sudden orders for the Battalion less "A" Company at Canaples to move out of Gezaincourt to make room for the 42nd Brigade. We marched to billets in Ivergny.

6 March.—Marched to Sus-St.-Leger and stayed there training hard until the 20th when the Brigade relieved the 112th Brigade of the 37th Division in the Fonquevillers to Monchy au Bois sector and we marched to reserve billets in Pommier.

24.—We relieved the Somerset L.I. in the Hannescamps sector. This new sector was good and fairly quiet. The 2nd Bn. Royal Irish Rifles were on our right and the 1st Bn. Royal Warwick (10th Brigade) on our left; 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. in support and the East Lancashire in reserve.

30.—Relieved by Somerset L.I. and went into close support in Hannescamps and Fonquevillers. Major W. L. V. Prescott-Westcar ordered to take command of the 10th Battalion. From this time until 2 May passed uneventfully. When not in the line, we were alternately in close support or in reserve in Pommier.

2 May.—Relieved by the 11th Bn. Warwickshire of the 112th Brigade, 37th Division, and went for one night to Pommier.

3.—Marched to billets in Halloy. The Division was then transferred to the VIIIth Corps (Lieutenant-General Sir A. Hunter-Weston's) of the IVth Army.

6.—Moved to billets in Beaumetz and Prouville and trained vigorously until the 15th, when we moved to Manchy and Le Festel, returning to Beaumetz on the 21st and going on to Amplier on the 22nd, and to Beaussart on the 23rd. Here we stayed until 11 June, when we marched to Mailly-Maillet and there worked on the preparation of the Battalion assembly area until 22nd when we returned to Beaussart.

24 June.—Our preliminary bombardments increased daily in intensity. At 10 p.m. on the 26th we moved to bivouacs on the Forceville-Mailly road.

27.—Battalion addressed by the Divisional Commander.

29.—“A” and “B” Companies moved into assembly trenches. On night 29-30 two attempts to enter the enemy's trenches were made by parties under the command of 2nd Lieutenants F. W. Kirkland and R. A. Patterson, but failed owing to uncut wire. By the morning of the 30th the assembly of the Battalion in its positions was completed. The battle was first ordered to begin on 29 June but was afterwards postponed until 1 July. The Battalion assembled in part of our trenches in which lay the road angle formed by the Serre—Mailly-Maillet road and the road known as Watling street which ran north-west from Beaumont-Hamel to this road. The trenches in which “I” Company assembled on the right or south of the Battalion front lay just west of the crest of Redan ridge.

"A" Company was on its left and formed the centre, whilst the left of "B" Company, which formed the left or north of the front, rested on the Serre road. "C" Company, in close support, assembled immediately in rear of "I" Company. The 4th Division was one of the Divisions of the VIIIth Corps which was the most northern Corps involved in the Battle of the Somme, and was entrusted with the difficult task of breaking through and capturing the enormously strong enemy positions about Serre, which not only had the advantage of higher ground but had been prepared for months with every sort of defence, both trenches and wire, known to the German. Our preliminary bombardment, which began six days before zero day, was at that stage of the war thought terrific but, as was afterwards shown, was not sufficient to outweigh the natural advantages and remarkable defences of the enemy's position. The general direction of the attack was east, and the 11th Infantry Brigade reinforced by the 6th and 8th Battalions of the Warwickshire Regiment, was allotted as objective the system of trenches immediately north of Beaumont-Hamel as far as the Serre road; an advance on a front of about one mile to a depth of about one mile, and including an extremely strong redoubt known as Ridge Redoubt. In order of battle the 1st Bn. Rifle Brigade formed the centre of the first wave of the Brigade, with the 1st Bn. East Lancashire on its right and the 8th Bn. Warwickshire on its left, the remaining three Battalions, the 1st Bn. Hants, 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. and the 6th Bn. Warwickshire, formed the second wave which was to pass through at the first objective and carry out the assault and capture of the second objective. This attack was planned minutely and all details of equipment, com-

munication, both on the ground and with aeroplanes, etc., carefully thought out and arranged.

### BATTLE OF THE SOMME.

1 July.—The Battle of the Somme began and at zero we attacked. At first the advance behind the barrage appeared to go quite well, but when the first wave was within a few yards of the enemy's front line, a hail of rifle and machine-gun fire opened on them from the enemy's front line and from defences on the Redan ridge and about Serre, which owing to the rising of the ground also commanded "No Man's Land." So heavy was this fire that only a few of our men succeeded in reaching the enemy's wire, and the Somerset L.I. who advanced to reinforce them were unable to reach them owing to the fire which they met as they left our line. One small party of the right ("I") Company succeeded in getting into the enemy's front line but was unable to hold out as it could not get into touch with either flank. The first wave of the left ("B") Company took part of the German front line and bombed its way to the south where, however, such strong resistance was met that, as they had failed to get into touch with anyone, they ceased to advance, and established a block. This action, however, enabled the supporting ("C") Company and some of the Shropshire L.I. to enter the enemy's front line on their left and to capture the second German line on the Serre—Beaumont-Hamel road and also the third German line. Here, as the attack on their right failed, they could not get touch and so established blocks on either flank. This point ("B" Company front) proved the line of least resistance and drew in some of the second and third waves from

the south ("A" Company) and some of the 8th Bn. Warwickshire from the north, and soon the lines captured became filled with men. This little isolated force was later reinforced by some men of the 10th and 12th Brigades and managed to hold on till about 4.30 p.m. although both its flanks were in the air. Our Battalion bombers displayed great skill and courage at the block on the right flank, and it was mainly due to this that the composite force succeeded in maintaining its position so long as it did. Ours and the other Lewis-gunners also did magnificent work but were one by one knocked out, and slowly our supply of bombs failed and the German guns began to get the range of our positions. At about 4.30 the Germans managed to establish themselves in some trenches near our right block, and as we had practically no bombs left, they had no difficulty in dislodging our bombers. The position then became desperate, and though some of our men stayed and died in that trench, most were forced back to the second enemy line. This, we only succeeded in holding for a quarter of an hour, and in the end we fell back to the German first line, and here a force consisting of ourselves, some of the 2nd Bn. Seaforth, 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. and Warwickshire of the 48th Division, held out all night until relieved on the morning of the 2nd by the 1st Bn. Royal Irish Fusiliers. During the evening of the 1st and all through the night this little force drove off repeated bombing attacks down the communication trenches from both the south and the north-east. The enemy, however, made no counter-attack across the open. The system of attack was on a front of three companies, with six platoons in the first wave in line, three platoons, Lewis-gunners and bombing squads in second wave, and three platoons in line in

third wave; 100 yards between waves. The attack failed partly only, as its intention was to keep the enemy anxious and prevent reinforcements being sent to the more important front south of the Ancre, as well as to effect the actual penetration of his line, and the first of these objects was without doubt accomplished by the tenacity and courage of the troops. The losses suffered by the Battalion were very severe and included the C.O. who was killed early in the attack.

2 July.—After relief the remains of the Battalion marched to bivouacs south of Mailly and stayed there resting for one day. On the 4th we marched to a camp at Bertrancourt where we stayed, absorbing reinforcements and reorganizing until the 10th when we relieved the 2nd Bn. West Riding Regiment, in support trenches and at Mailly.

15.—Relieved the 1st Somerset L.I. in the front line south of the Serre road.

20.—We were relieved by the 8th Bn. Royal Fusiliers and proceeded to Bus-les-Artois. Captain Peyton joined and took over command. Up to this date since the battle, nine Officers and 476 other ranks joined us, the latter coming from the K.R.R.C.

21.—Marched to Beauval and from thence to Doullens on the 23rd where we entrained and proceeded to Esquelbec, being transferred to the IIInd Army. From this detraining point we marched to billets at Keiken Put and stayed until 26th when we entrained at Wormhoudt for Poperinghe and proceeded to camps about eight miles from this place.

27.—The 4th Division relieved the Guards' Division and we relieved the Somerset L.I. on the Canal Bank north of Ypres.

28.—Moved to the Canal Bank north of Ypres and



north-east of Boesinghe. There we were in support of the left Battalion of the Division. Major Barclay was killed by a sniper on the 28th. We stayed on the Canal Bank until the 31st, working hard by night on the front line.

On the night 1st August we relieved the Somerset L.I. in the line where it touched the Canal Bank and became the left Battalion of the British line.

1 August.—2nd Lieutenant J. Chapman was wounded. On the 2nd an aeroplane which was believed to be French fell between the lines. The enemy at once sent out a party which was driven off by one of our Vickers' guns. That evening we sent a patrol to the place but it lost its way and when it reached the wreckage found that the enemy had got there first and had removed the bodies of the occupants and the engine. On the 3rd, however, a patrol recovered the pilot's seat. We also had a patrol encounter with a party of the Germans who attempted to bomb one of our saps and we successfully drove them off with bombs.

We were relieved on the 5th and returned to the same dug-outs on the Canal Bank.

8.—In the evening the Battalion moved up from the Canal in front of Brielen to take over the trench from the 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. The relief was hardly finished when the Germans started to discharge gas on the 4th Division front. This gas was unexpected as there was a fairly strong wind blowing. At the same time the Germans put up a heavy barrage lasting for about three hours, mostly falling on the support lines and roads behind. All telephonic communication was cut, including wires to the Artillery. This made getting into touch with the companies in the front line very difficult and it was aggravated by the fact that the few

communication trenches were congested by the Battalion of the Somerset L.I. who were on their way out. The Battalion was largely composed of new drafts who had joined since the 1st of July. The *moral* of the men was very good in spite of heavy casualties. Communication was established by orderlies from Headquarters and the barrage put up by the Artillery and the survivors of the Battalion was very effective and prevented the Germans from making an attack. We heard afterwards from a prisoner that the Germans had brought up a fresh Brigade with a view to penetrate our lines. Had they succeeded in doing this the situation would have been very serious.

2nd Lieutenants Weill, Handford, Haldane and Doyle were killed, and Captain Norbury, 2nd Lieutenants Barnes, Hill, Golding and Barton were wounded.

There were very nearly 200 casualties among N.C.O.'s and men, with a preponderance of killed.

Throughout August the Battalion was in the Ypres salient and after the gas attack on the 8th, was resting in one of the camps near Poperinghe. Captain Fellowes arrived on 16 August and took over command and Peyton became 2nd-in-Command. About the 20th we took over the Hooge sector extending from the Menin road on the left to the end of Sanctuary wood, an enormous frontage for three Companies to hold, but the German trenches were some 1,000 yards away. The trenches in Sanctuary wood were shocking and in places only about knee high, and wherever one went one was under direct observation from the German lines. Battalion Headquarters were in a tile factory outside Zillebeke. We did two tours in these trenches and were then relieved by the Australians and told that we were to have "a month's rest."

Our first day of rest was broken by the whole Brigade having to pack up at two hours notice and prepare to march to Dunkirk. This we did and for the next four days lived at Coudekerque, about five miles outside Dunkirk, and from there played with some success the rôle of a stage army. The Brigade used to march each day into Dunkirk with much pomp and advertisement. We then hid ourselves away among the docks and along the sand dunes, one Battalion each day embarking in trawlers and mine-sweepers and disembarking half an hour later in the back waters on the docks; then in the evening we marched back by devious routes to our billets and pretended that we were not the same people that had started out that morning. It was a curious show altogether and we never quite understood it, but no doubt we were never meant to. After this we returned to Bollezeele for the remainder of our "rest," but early next morning got orders to pack up to move down to the Somme. We were inspected that afternoon by General Hunter-Weston, the Corps Commander, and entrained that night, detraining just outside Amiens. For the next three weeks we were in billets at Allonville and Vaux-sur-Somme where we did a lot of training and then began to move up to the forward area for the Battalion's second go in the Battle of the Somme.

The fighting that the Battalion took part in in October was confined entirely to the country between the Les Boeufs—Morval ridge and the German system in front of Le Transloy—the depth of the country was about 2,000 yards and the Germans were holding no definite trench line but were occupying fortified shell holes, abandoned gun pits, and short lengths of trench all over the place. Machine-guns were scattered in

every direction and were almost impossible to locate. Several attempts had been made to clear this country and get within jumping-off distance for a big attack on the Le Transloy system, but these had made very little progress.

4 October.—The 4th Division came up to take on the job and after attacks by the 10th and 12th Brigades, the 11th Brigade moved up.

16.—We had been bivouacking round Montauban and left there in the evening and took over part of the captured German system west of Les Boeufs. The Colonel and Company Commanders made a reconnaissance by moonlight of the assembly trenches and the routes up.

The following night as soon as it was dark we relieved the 2nd Bn. Royal Dublin Fusiliers. The assembly area was somewhat complicated and the Battalion was eventually assembled in six separate lengths of trench—only two of which were connected. On the right the assembly trenches were 450 yards ahead of the trenches where the remainder of the Battalion was collected. The total Battalion front was about 800 yards. The Companies were disposed as follows: "C," with Boughton-Knight and Young-husband on the right, "I," with Gracey and Blackie in the centre, and "B," with Beech and Taylor on the left. "A," with Herbert and Holmes à Court was split up between "B" and "I." The Colonel and Jackson were at Battalion Headquarters and Lole at an advanced report centre. The objectives of the Battalion were two isolated lengths of trenches and some old gun-pits that had been fortified by the Germans and formed a regular nest of machine-guns.

It was a terrible night of pouring rain and pitch

darkness and the relief took a long time. One Company of the 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. was attached to the Battalion as a support, and a "tank" was put at our disposal. The attack started at 3.40 a.m. and we advanced under a creeping barrage. The *32me Régiment d'Infanterie* attacked on our right and the 1st Bn. East Lancashire on our left. "C" Company on the right and the French were unable to make much progress owing to heavy machine-gun fire which caused many casualties. "B" Company on the left reached the gun-pits and a party under C.S.M. Sawyer managed to get through them after heavy fighting. The remainder, after some lively bombing in the pits, in the course of which two or three machine-guns were put out of action, were compelled to fall back owing to superior numbers, and also to more machine-guns appearing on the scene from different shell-holes and from some other gun-pits that were connected by passages with those that we were engaging. C.S.M. Sawyer's party, seeing that no one was coming up to them from the gun-pits, made the best of their way to our front line. For his skilful handling of this party and the excellent work he did C.S.M. Sawyer was awarded the D.C.M. In the meantime "I" Company in the centre had had a most adventurous time of it. Their objective was the farthest one of all and in the darkness, direction was lost by the majority of the Company. After going for some considerable distance and meeting with no opposition, it was realized that they had gone too far and must have passed in between the isolated trenches they were going for, and were therefore behind the German line. After reorganizing, the Company proceeded back to where they heard most of the fighting going on. They had some stiff fighting on the way back and

accounted for three machine-guns and at least fifty Germans. Acting-Corporal Jackson and Rifleman Clayton particularly distinguished themselves in these encounters, and on two occasions went forward and dealt with isolated parties of the enemy that were holding up the Company with machine-gun fire from shell-holes. For their dash and initiative both these men were awarded the D.C.M.

"I" Company eventually came up to the gun-pits from the enemy's rear and as they approached, a German Officer came out towards them evidently thinking that they were reinforcements coming up. He was at once shot, and the survivors of "I" Company, under fifty strong, eventually regained our front line at different places.

For many hours the situation was extremely obscure. Men of different Battalions were mixed up in all the trenches and the task of reorganizing was extremely difficult. No less than four Officers were missing, Beech, Boughton-Knight and both Officers of "I" Company, Gracey and Blackie. Herbert was wounded, Holmes à Court also, but he managed to carry on and help in the reorganization. Younghusband was wounded and later on in the day, Wilson, who had gone to assist Lole at the advanced report centre. C.S.M. Arnold of "B" Company was also missing.

There were no Officers with either "C" or "I" Companies; Taylor and Holmes à Court being the only Officers in the whole front line. Our "tank" that had been sent to assist in the attack on the gun-pits had got stuck on a sunken road some 600 yards behind and so never came into action.

18 October.—About 11 a.m. we were warned to co-operate with the French in an attack that they



were making at noon, and two more Companies of the Somerset L.I. were put at our disposal for this. These moved up to a position of readiness on our right flank, but as the French attack never materialized, they did not come into action.

In the afternoon a report was received from a stretcher bearer that he had just made his way back from Frosty Trench—one of "I" Company's objectives—that a party of twenty-five men under Sergeant Bates were in occupation there and had been several times attacked by Germans from Misty Trench, a trench just beyond; the R.F.C. also reported that a body of our men were seen in Frosty Trench.

As soon as it was dark Lole took a reconnoitring party forward from "C" Company's trench and found no British troops in Frosty Trench but that it was held by some Germans. These retired back to Misty Trench and we at once occupied Frosty Trench with a party under Sergeant Durban and Corporal Aldrich. They successfully beat off a counter-attack during the night and the trench was joined up to "C" Company on the right in the course of the night and thus a valuable piece of ground was gained. We remained in the front line all the next day (19th) and were relieved that night by the Somerset L.I. The weather had been appalling the whole time and the state of the trenches beyond words—especially the communication trenches, which were quite impassable. The Colonel had been round the front line after the attack on the 18th, and again that night and in the early morning of the 19th, with Green, who had brought the rations up and had remained up to assist at Headquarters; they both returned one mass of mud from head to foot. Battalion Headquarters had been in the Flers system of trenches and it was a

pathetic sight to see the Colonel and Jackson sitting at the foot of a shallow mine-shaft with one of the steps as a table and a torrent of water and mud pouring down the shaft. As anyone passed the entrance more mud was splashed down on to them and their maps and papers. A very unsafe shelter in the trench outside housed the liaison Officers from the French regiment on our right, the Artillery, R.E., the "tank," etc., and their orderlies, and a hastily constructed aid post was next door.

Among the decorations awarded for these operations were the Military Cross to Herbert, who though wounded had done splendid work in leading the attack and in reorganizing after it; the Military Medal to Sergeant Durban and Corporal Aldrich; and a bar to his M.M. to Rifleman Greenwood. Our total casualties were eight Officers and 253 other ranks.

On relief we went back to Guillemont and bivouacked in shell-holes—an unpleasant form of sport under the weather conditions that existed at that time. It froze most nights: there was little or no cover except what we made ourselves with sheets of corrugated iron, sandbags, etc. The next three days were spent in reorganizing and in bringing up Officers and men from the Transport lines who had been left out as reinforcements before 18 October. Even then we could only muster eleven Officers who were distributed as follows: the Colonel, Jackson and Green at Headquarters; Jenkyns and Robson with "A"; Taylor and Baggallay with "B"; Greenfield and Laurence with "C"; and Norris and Tyrwhitt-Drake with "I" Companies. Holmes à Court had been sent down sick and Lole had gone on leave.

We soon heard that another attack was to be made,

and on the 22nd we moved forward again and took over trenches that night in support of the 1st Bn. Hants. Once again our assembly trenches were somewhat scattered and detached.

23 October.—Our programme this time was to follow in support of the 1st Bn. Hants, who were attacking where "C" Company attacked on the 18th, and then to pass through and consolidate on a line some 900 yards further on, capturing a few isolated posts and lengths of trench en route. The 32nd French Regiment of Infantry were again on our right and the 2nd Bn. Dublin Fusiliers were on our left supported by the 1st Bn. Warwickshire.

Battalion Headquarters were in a dug-out in the sunken road between Les Bœufs and Morval with an advanced report centre some way to the front. Zero hour was 2.30 p.m. It had originally been fixed for 11.30 a.m., but owing to a mist and at the request of the French it was postponed to 2.30 p.m.

The Battalion advanced in small columns, ten minutes after zero according to plan, strongly and well. Soon after zero the trenches came under long range machine-gun fire and as the men were getting out, bullets were hitting the parapet. This was almost our first experience of the German machine-gun barrage, which was their reply to our standing Artillery barrage and which evolved our creeping and sweeping barrage with both high explosive and shrapnel later on.

We got through the barrage all right and after advancing some 450 yards the leading Companies topped a rise and came under terrific machine-gun fire from the front and left front. This fire was about knee-high and just skimmed the top of the ridge. The Hants were seen to be hung up in front and only a small party had

got into the German trench on the right of the road from Morval to Le Transloy cemetery. Our first two waves pushed on and got incorporated with the Hants but could make no further progress. (Map 57C.)

On our right some thirty men by crawling forward from shell-hole to shell-hole were able to join the party of Hants in Boritska trench. Later in the evening, however, these were driven out by bombing attacks from both flanks covered by machine-gun fire. In the meantime the Companies in support had pushed up to the ridge but could make no progress, and as by now it was dark, efforts were made to reorganize and a trench was dug to connect with the Dublin Fusiliers on our left, who had got through the gun-pits. It was a pitch black night and reorganization was difficult and it was almost impossible to locate where everyone was. However a good trench was dug and the Colonel, who went round the front line next morning at 3.45 a.m., was able to find most of the Battalion. On the evening of the 24th we were relieved by the 2nd Bn. Royal Welsh Fusiliers and spent that night in the open in Trones wood. Our casualties were, Greenfield and Laurence killed, Jenkyns, Robson and Baggallay wounded, and 117 other ranks killed, wounded and missing.

The next few days were spent moving backward by road and rail and we eventually found ourselves at Hocquincourt where we started training. However we were only here five days and then moved to Rambures, where we had a very pleasant month's rest and did some useful training. Leave was reopened to everyone's great joy and we got away on leave a good deal. Many new Officers joined us here and two or three drafts. The country all round was very pleasant

and we were exceedingly comfortable. The Divisional "Follies" were billeted in the village with us for a week and they had crowded houses nightly. We had a parade for the Divisional General one day, when he presented medal ribbons. Another event of interest was a football match between the Officers and Sergeants, in which the former were badly defeated in spite of Lamb's heroic efforts in goal. Whilst at Rambures, General Rees, our Brigadier, left and was succeeded by General Berners.

7 December.—We left on this day by rail, and then began the weary move up to the forward area, stopping en route at various camps, each of which seemed to be filthier and with deeper mud than the last.

"The back of the front" on the Somme during the winter of 1916-1917 is not likely to be forgotten by those who went through it; for sheer undiluted misery and discomfort it was impossible to beat. We none of us were well and we were seldom warm. One lived and slept and moved in mud. Everything that one touched was muddy and after a time one's mind got into very much the same state.

At first we held the line at Rancourt opposite St. Pierre Vaast wood. The line was here held by one Company, finding eight isolated posts. A Company relief took place each night as twenty-four hours was the longest that the men could remain in the front line. Our next sector was the next one northwards just below Sailly-Saillisel; here the front was held by twelve posts. The whole of this sector was a dreary waste of mud and shell holes, overflowing with water.

25.—Xmas Day was spent by the Battalion at Priez farm where we were in support, and was only remarkable for the extra amount of work done, improving the

very bad accommodation there, and the blowing up of one of our bomb stores by a German shell. Under these pleasant conditions O'Brien, Davison and Walker joined us and made their acquaintance with the pleasures of a winter campaign.

LIST OF OFFICERS ON STRENGTH OF THE BATTALION  
ON 31 DECEMBER, 1916.

Rank and Name	Type of Commission	Remarks
Capt. (A/Lieut.-Col.) R. T. Fellowes, M.C.	R.	Commanding
„ (A/Major) H. S. C. Peyton ...	R.	2nd-in-Command
[Major D. G. Lamb ... ..	S.R.	With Works Bn.]
Capt. I. C. Montford... ..	S.R.	O.C. "C" Coy.
Lieut. G. L. Jackson... ..	R.	O.C. "B" Coy.
„ A. M. Craigmile ... ..	S.R.	O.C. "I" Coy.
2nd Lieut. R. A. Patterson ... ..	S.R.	O.C. "A" Coy.
„ J. A. Davison ... ..	R.	
[ „ D. G. M. Fraser-Luckie... ..	S.R.	At Bde. Hdqrs.]
„ L. L. Green ... ..	S.R.	Adjutant
„ A. G. Lole ... ..	S.R.	
„ C. H. Walker ... ..	S.R.	
„ T. V. Tyrwhitt-Drake ... ..	R.	
„ J. B. Macgeorge... ..	R.	
„ Hon. D. E. F. O'Brien ... ..	R.	
„ B. W. Dennis ... ..	T.	
[ „ S. E. Southgate ... ..	T.	With Works Bn.]
[ „ C. A. Pickering ... ..	T.	With Works Bn.]
„ G. G. Wellerd ... ..	T.	
„ T. Carlyle ... ..	T.	
„ C. C. Naumann ... ..	S.R.	

*The movements of the 1st Battalion during the year 1916 can be followed out on the following sheets of W.D. Map No. 2743 (Scale 1:40,000).*

Pp. 1—7	...	...	...	...	Map 57 <sup>D</sup> .
„ 7—9	...	...	...	...	„ 28.
„ 10	...	...	...	...	„ 19.
„ 10—18	...	...	...	...	„ 57 <sup>C</sup> .

## WAR-RECORD OF 1st BATTALION. 1917.

The official celebration of Christmas took place on 7 January, when we were back in Camp 13, near Chipilly, and a very good day too it was which everyone enjoyed. The men decorated their huts extremely well considering the shortage of material, and G.S. blankets were found to form an excellent background for the various mottoes and messages of greeting and good wishes, made out of cotton wool. Most of the fir trees in the vicinity were stripped of their branches to decorate the huts with. An excellent meal was served at night and all the good old customs were adhered to.

Just at this time we were lucky to find the 2nd Battalion in the camp next door to us and we had a great *entente* together—three football matches were played. The 2nd Battalion Officers and the 2nd Battalion Sergeants defeated the 1st Battalion in their two games, while the 1st Battalion was successful in the Battalion match.

Our next three tours in the trenches were all in the Bouchavesnes sector where we relieved the French on 16 January. We never went into the same lot of trenches twice and during our last tour we were under the 10th Brigade, commanded by General Gosling of the 60th. Here we came in for two heavy bombardments and lost over forty men in forty-eight hours. The cold during January and February was intense but it was certainly better than the mud of December. We were unfortunate in catching the beginning of the thaw just at the end of our time there which turned

the trenches into a state that it is impossible to describe. (**Map 36<sup>B</sup>.**)

Tyrwhitt-Drake and Southgate were killed while we were at Bouchavesnes and Dennis was caught by a Boche patrol one night after they had wounded him in the arm and leg. He has written quite happily from Germany where he seems to be well looked after.

At the end of February we came out of the line and spent the whole of March training at Rougefay and La Thieuloye. At the former place we were close to Brownlow's School and he and Bligh came over and saw us. Wilson from the XIXth Corps and Follett, who had just returned to France, also paid us visits. A lot of football was played and the Officers defeated the Sergeants by 7—2, and so avenged their defeat last November.

At the beginning of April we moved forward again to take part in the Battle of Arras. During our training a host of new Officers joined us at various times, including Cavendish, Stewart, who went off almost at once to command the 13th Battalion, and Mostyn-Owen, who also stayed a very short time and left to go as 2nd-in-Command of a Manchester Battalion. (**Map 51<sup>B</sup>.**)

#### BATTLE OF ARRAS, 9-16 APRIL, 1917.

On 9 April the 4th Division was in reserve and its rôle was to pass through the three assaulting Divisions of the XVIIth Corps, namely, the 51st, 34th, and 9th, after they had captured the first three systems, and to assault part of the fourth German system between Fampoux and Gavrelle.

The rôle of the Battalion was to pass through this system and capture and consolidate Hyderabad



Redoubt. "A" and "C" Companies were to do this supported by "B" Company, whose job it was to occupy a sunken road between the fourth German system and the redoubt and make a line of strong points along it. "I" Company was detailed for carrying purposes only and was under the Brigade.

On the evening of the 8th, we were in camp at Maroeuil wood.

We started off at about 5.30 a.m. on the 9th, heavily laden with picks, shovels, bombs, etc., Schiff's orderly carrying a football tied to his rifle.

The Battalion went into action with Headquarters and three Companies, totalling thirteen Officers and 342 other ranks, distributed as follows:—

At Headquarters: the Colonel, Green and Lole, with Dale, our Medical Officer.

"A" Company: Cavendish, Wellerd, Bridgeman, Day.

"B" Company: Jackson; Booth, Spencer.

"C" Company: Davison, Waudby, Schiff.

After a two hours' wait at our assembly area, during which we had hot "dinners," we left at 10.30 in column of route, crossing the original "No Man's Land" and halted for an hour behind the second German system under the Arras-Lens railway embankment. By this time we knew that things were going well; masses of prisoners had passed us going to the rear and our Artillery were moving forward to take up positions.

Our next move was in artillery formation on a two-company front until we reached the third German system, where we had to halt for two and a half hours, to allow for a new bombardment.

Prisoners still kept coming in and it was a strange sight to see bodies of these Boches wandering about

over the country with no escort and apparently nobody taking any interest in them.

Our show started at 3.40 p.m. and we moved in artillery formation of platoons on a one-company front following behind the 1st Somerset L.I. After about 1,000 yards we extended to battle formation. When we came over the ridge in front of the fourth German system we came into the German barrage and as it was extremely thin, we hardly had any casualties at all.

We had great difficulty in getting through the German wire, which was forty yards thick in places, as our Artillery had completely failed to cut it. The Boche was so anxious to give himself up and we were so anxious to get on, that the confusion which reigned was such that no one could move either way through the gaps that did exist. It will always remain a mystery why the Germans put up no fight here. The wire was unbroken in front of them and a couple of machine-guns could have held up the advance of the whole Division. One hundred and forty prisoners were taken in the fourth system.

We had some difficulty in getting through the fourth system and soon after we came under machine-gun fire from an inn on the Roeux-Gavrelle road and from Gavrelle. We soon managed to pick out the Redoubt on account of the masses of wire with which it was surrounded, and which we could see was completely intact.

On our way up to it a large black dog came galloping out to meet us. When we got within twenty yards of it the football was drop-kicked into the Redoubt and the place was rushed. The various "mopping up" parties under Bridgeman started clearing the dug-outs and after a time seven Officers and nine

men appeared. A Staff Officer tried to bolt down the road to Gavrelle and was at once shot by "C" Company's sniping Corporal. The consolidating parties got into position quickly, and outpost posts and patrols were sent out. These however, as well as all parties outside the Redoubt, were heavily fired on by the Germans who were lying out in the open between the Redoubt and the Roeux-Gavrelle road and had organized their snipers very quickly. The patrols could make no headway and the consolidating parties were being picked off one by one, so everyone was withdrawn inside the Redoubt and all efforts were concentrated on consolidating the place. Schiff was most unfortunately shot through the heart just after having withdrawn his party.

Up till dark we got several good targets for rifles and Lewis-guns and it is certain that the enemy suffered heavy casualties. These undoubtedly would have been considerably heavier had not the ammunition almost entirely run out. Rifleman Dunbrill distinguished himself bringing in a wounded man and then he insisted on going out again to salve a Lewis-gun.

"B" Company in the meanwhile had consolidated their position. Unfortunately Jackson was hit and died on his way from the Regimental Aid-post to the dressing station. A great loss to the Battalion. "B" Company's Headquarters were in an enormous dug-out with seven entrances in the Sunken road which had been the Headquarters of a German Artillery General and was full of maps, documents, etc.

By this time it was getting dark. Germans were closing in on the north, south, and east faces and had begun digging in, in a semicircle 400 to 200 yards off.

The troops of the 12th Brigade on the right had not appeared and an enemy counter-attack by two Battalions was seen coming from the direction of Gavrelle. This attack however was not pressed home and came under heavy fire from our Artillery.

During the night some half-hearted attempts by the enemy to advance were frustrated and a patrol of four Prussians, who had been sent to recover some documents from the Redoubt, was captured. Corporal Lodge spent most of the night patrolling in front of the wire and brought back some extremely useful information. He and Dumbrill and Rifleman Walker, who did wonderful work in bringing in the wounded, were all awarded the Military Medal, and Rifleman Greenwood was awarded the D.C.M. for bringing in Wellerd who had been hit 200 yards outside the wire. This gallant act was performed in spite of very heavy machine-gun fire.

"A" Company had lost all its Officers, and Sergeant Stanford took command and did good work in reorganizing the Company and was awarded the Military Medal for his work. Davison was in command in the Redoubt, with Waudby, the only other survivor of the Officers of "A" and "C" Companies. The Redoubt was occupied at about 4.30 p.m. and by 3 a.m. on the 10th the situation was fairly secure, and touch had been gained with the 12th Brigade on the right.

During the 9th a total of ten Officers, including a General and his staff and thirteen other ranks had been captured, also three heavy howitzers, a travelling kitchen, a machine-gun, and much telephone equipment and a mass of official documents, orders and maps. Our casualties that day were Jackson and Schiff killed.

Cavendish, Bridgeman, Day and Wellerd wounded (the latter unfortunately died of wounds later) and 123 other ranks killed, wounded and missing.

The total depth of the advance made was 6,000 yards beyond the German front line and the Battalion reached and held the furthest point of the whole British advance.

It was a great day full of excitement and interest and was chiefly remarkable for the utter demoralization of the Boche and more especially for the extraordinary way in which the advances were made exactly up to time, according to the time-table laid down. It seemed far more like another of the many rehearsals, than one of the greatest battles of the War.

At mid-day on the 10th we were relieved by the Somerset L.I. and stayed for forty-eight hours in the fourth German system.

On the 12th the Battalion co-operated with the 9th Division on its right in an attack made on the German positions. "A" and "B" Companies assembled in a trench north of the Redoubt with "C" Company in support. Zero hour was 5.30 p.m. but long before that time the Germans had spotted the advance of the 9th Division, which had come up across the open from a considerable distance back.

Our own assembly trenches were heavily bombarded by heavy Artillery and swept by machine-gun fire from the north and east. At "zero" the whole of "B" and the first wave of "A" Company got out of the trenches, but in the face of such fire progress was impossible and in less than two minutes two Officers and fifty-one men were casualties.

Patterson and Spencer died gallant deaths standing upon the parapets helping the men out of the very

deep and muddy trenches. Sergeant Searle also was conspicuous for his gallantry on this occasion. He was badly wounded and later, was awarded the D.C.M. for his splendid example. The advance of the 9th Division could make no progress. Apart from the heavy fire we were subjected to both in the trenches and getting over the parapet, the assembly trenches were very deep and the weather conditions had rendered them almost impassable, the mud being knee-deep in places and very sticky, and it was with the greatest difficulty that the men scrambled up the slippery sides of the trench.

The next four days were spent holding the trenches which were heavily and consistently shelled day and night.

On the 15th "B" Company was sent to support the 1st Bn. Hampshire Regiment, in a bombing attack.

On the evening of the 16th we were relieved by the 1st Bn. Royal Warwickshire Regiment and we went back to dug-outs and shelters in the German first line system.

The weather conditions throughout were exceptionally severe and cover and shelter in the trenches were practically non-existent. On the 9th we started off in pouring rain at a very early hour and though it was fine at mid-day and in the afternoon, yet later on there was heavy rain, hail and snow storms. The same conditions existed on the 10th, with a very heavy fall at night, and the next two days were bitterly cold. The 13th and 14th were fine but it rained all day on the 15th. The trenches were in an extremely bad condition with mud knee-deep and very sticky. From the 13th all communication trenches to the front were completely destroyed by shell fire.

Casualties for the week were :—

Four Officers killed and five wounded ; one of them died later of wounds. 229 other ranks were killed, wounded, and missing, and twenty-three were sent back sick.

The proportion of casualties among N.C.O.'s was exceptionally severe.

Davison was awarded the Military Cross for his fine work on the first day when he was in command at the Redoubt and the Colonel got the D.S.O.

We spent the next four days in the old German front system and then moved back for a week's rest at Villers-sur-Simon, and began to move forward again on the 28th, staying at two camps and in Arras en route. On 2 May we went into the line again. Peyton was in command of the Battalion as the Colonel, with the C.O. of the Hants was ordered to remain behind—only two C.O.'s per Brigade being allowed to go in. (**Map 51<sup>B</sup>**)

#### ATTACK ON AND CAPTURE OF THE CHEMICAL WORKS NEAR ROEUX, 3—13 MAY, 1917.

On 3 May the Battalion was to come under the orders of the O.C. 12th Brigade, which was going to attack the Chemical Works near Roeux. The orders we received were that we were not to go forward until we could see the troops of the 12th Brigade advancing past the Chemical Works towards Plouvain.

The distribution of Officers was as follows :—

Headquarters: Peyton, Green, Davison.

"A" Company: Shaw, Nobbs, Smith.

"C" Company: Montford, Cunningham, Tidball.

"I" Company: Bland, Williamson, Anthony.

"B" Company did all the carrying.

On the night of 3 May the Battalion moved into the fourth German system and we received our orders on the morning of the 4th. It happened that there was a tremendous mist and it was not until 11 a.m. that we could see anything of the Chemical Works at all. Even then the situation was extremely obscure. Green went forward to find out what actually had happened, which was that the assaulting troops were not to be found and that the Chemical Works and buildings were strongly held by Germans. This information was forwarded to the Brigadier who gave us orders to move our Headquarters to attack the Chateau at the Chemical Works. This was to be a bayonet attack, without artillery preparation.

At about 11 p.m. the Boches' machine-gun fire increased on the roads and tracks and what happened to be our assembly trenches. Owing to the country being strange Shaw could not start his attack until 3 a.m. and by this time the machine-gun fire had so increased that it was impossible to advance in the face of it. A second attempt was made and this time Montford brought "C" Company up to help Shaw. Montford and Cunningham were both wounded.

The next night, 5th, we were relieved and sent into some trenches north of the Arras-Douai railway, in front of the Chemical Works. Before dawn on the morning of the 6th all troops within 500 yards of the buildings had to withdraw to allow the heavy Artillery to bombard. At 8.30 that night Williamson took a patrol of forty men into the buildings. They were immediately bombed and fired on with rifles and a machine-gun firing from a barricade across the road. As soon as this happened the patrol started falling back, whereon Corporal Williams sat down on the road



and took pot-shots at the Boches. Anthony, who speaks fluent German, was stunned by a bomb; when he came to he heard a Boche machine-gun firing from near by. This eventually stopped and two Boches came out and saw him. They came up to him, kicked him, and said, "All right. Don't bother about him, the swine's dead." Eventually he managed to crawl in. Rifleman Gold was also laid out by a bomb and was brought in the next night, very shaken but unhurt.

Corporal Williams and Rifleman Gold were both awarded Military Medals subsequently.

On the night of the 7th, we were relieved and we went back to the German fourth line for a four days' rest.

We went up again on the evening of the 10th and remained all day on the 11th in our assembly trenches.

At 7.40 p.m. on the 11th, nine Brigades of Artillery placed a "creeping barrage" in front of our lines and on the buildings round the Chemical Works. The attack was completely successful. Sergeant Cooke in charge of the "mopping up" party captured forty Boches, three machine-guns and three trench mortars. As Bland was going forward a Boche Officer came up to him holding his hands up and just before he reached him he threw an "egg" bomb at Bland's party. Bland shot him with his revolver, and to make quite sure, the man behind him put another bullet into him and a third, not wishing to be outdone, ran him through with a sword.

Early on the morning of the 12th, "A" Company advanced another 500 yards under a "creeping barrage" and captured and consolidated Cupid trench.

Our casualties were not heavy: Green, Tidball, Williamson, Anthony, Smith and Nobbs were wounded.

That night we were relieved by the 1/8th Argyle and Sutherland Highlanders and we marched back to near Athies and moved next day to Arras and comfortable billets.

The weather was excellent the whole time. Among other things the masses of dead which littered the country made it extremely unpleasant.

Our casualties during this time were as follows:—

Eight Officers wounded; 195 other ranks killed, wounded and missing.

Among other awards: Green got a Military Cross and Sergeant Cooke a Military Medal.

After one night in Arras we went by omnibus to Buneville near St. Eloi where we stayed for just under a month and had a really splendid time. We did a good deal of training and a thorough reorganization, but we had plenty of amusements too. (Map 51C.)

Battalion Sports took place on 24 May and were a great success. We had the Divisional Band to play for us and the Transport had got up some excellent side-shows which proved a great attraction, especially to the French civilians. They were however distinctly puzzled at Rifleman Harrington who, with a black face, sat in a barrel and was the target for volleys of sticks thrown by the competitors some twenty yards away. It is not known whether anyone won the prize of a packet of "fags" for scoring a "bull." At the Brigade Sports that took place later on, we were well represented, Craigmile winning the 100 yards and quarter-mile and Rifleman Burfoot the mile. We also won the Marching Order race and Relay race and eventually tied with the Hants for first place.

A Brigade Boxing Tournament took place also and Rifleman Brown won the Feather-Weights. Rifleman

Gammell was defeated on points in the final of the Catch-Weights, after an extra round.

Our month at Buneville did us all a lot of good. The weather was splendid and we all enjoyed it. A good deal of Recreational training was done and Company-Sergeant-Major Sawyer proved an adept at inventing games for "A" Company. We had no less than three Ceremonial parades, and a fourth to which we sent 100 men during the month we were out. We were inspected by our Divisional General, General Lambton and by the Army Commander, and the other two parades were for the presentation of medal ribbons by the Corps Commander, Sir Charles Fergusson.

It was unfortunate that so many of our men who had received decorations as immediate rewards were casualties and therefore unable to be presented with their ribbons. Green (Military Cross); Sergeant Searle (D.C.M.); Rifleman Greenwood (D.C.M.); Rifleman Dumbrill, Corporal Lodge, Rifleman Walker and Corporal Williams, all of whom had been awarded the Military Medal were all wounded during April and May. The Colonel (D.S.O.), Davison (M.C.), Sergeant Stanford, Corporal West, Rifleman Gold and Sergeant Cooke (all Military Medals) were however present at one or the other of these parades.

Sergeant Cummins was awarded the D.C.M. in the Birthday Honours.

Whilst on the subject of decorations it might be mentioned that since 1 January, including the New Year's Honours List, the Battalion's record is:—

	Officers			Other ranks		
D.S.O.	...	...	...	2	...	—
Military Cross	...	...	...	2	...	1
D.C.M.	...	...	...	—	...	4
Military Medal	...	...	...	—	...	12
Mentioned in despatches	...	...	...	7	...	4

We left Buneville on 11 June by omnibus in a most terrific thunderstorm and after a day in Arras we went into reserve and on the 19th went into the line south of the river Scarpe where we stayed for a week.

On the evening of the 23rd, Carlyle with "B" Company made a good raid on a trench opposite our left—an Officer and six men were captured and at least thirty other Germans disposed of. In fact "B" Company thoroughly enjoyed themselves. Corporal Macadden invaded a Boche dug-out where the Officer and three or four men were and after a rough-and-tumble with them persuaded them to give him a drink; after which he sent them back to our lines. After a day and a half out we had the honour of being inspected by H.R.H. The Duke of Connaught at XVIIth Corps Headquarters. He walked round the whole Battalion and then made us a most excellent speech. We were all delighted to see him looking so fit and well and it was a great day for us being inspected on service by our Colonel-in-Chief.

We are now living in a so-called "camp" in the original German front line in front of Arras. The "camp" consists of shelters and dug-outs and looks more like a gipsy encampment than anything else, the shelters being made of corrugated iron and sandbags and waterproof sheets. We are in Divisional reserve just now and are doing a certain amount of training and providing a lot of working parties by day and night in the forward area. We have more Officers with us now than we have ever had before. No less than twelve having joined in the last fortnight.

Within the last eleven months, eighty-one Officers have passed through the Battalion—this includes those now serving with us.

It was in January that the new organization of the Infantry came into force and we used to learn it in the interval between our tours in the trenches and never got a real chance of putting it into force till March, when we came out to train for the Battle of Arras.

On 29 June the Battalion moved from Etrun, where we had been inspected by H.R.H. The Duke of Connaught, to Barrosa camp, north of St. Laurent Blangy. A fortnight's training and working parties were done here (**Map 51B.**)

From 13 July to 21st we were in front line trenches south of the river Scarpe. Trenches in good condition, which we greatly improved during the tour. Several saps were extended and special observation posts posted. Enemy very active with trench mortars and artillery, especially at night. Our patrols and observers got good information and several local "shoots" with Stokes mortars; machine-guns and Lewis-guns were also arranged to worry and annoy the enemy.

Casualties: One Officer, 2nd Lieut. Evans, and fourteen other ranks wounded.

On 21 July we were relieved by 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. and went into Brigade support in Himalaya trench, east of Feuchy with three Companies. "B" Company remained in Lancer lane and garrisoned strong points. Day and night working parties and carrying parties to front line. Specialist classes and Company training took up all our time. While here we received reinforcements of one Officer and 234 other ranks.

On 28 July we moved back to Barrosa camp as the Brigade came into Divisional reserve. For the first four days we provided all working parties, and began training on 4 August. Divisional Sports were held

during the time we were out, and Craigmile won the Officers' race. Our Transport personnel provided the comic element and ran their usual "side shows." A Battalion exercise was carried out one day to practise following up a withdrawal by the enemy. The weather was bad most of the time and we had a lot of rain.

On 10 August we moved across the river and went into a temporary camp near Tilloy and for four nights we provided a working party of 300 men digging a cable trench near Monchy. (Map 51<sup>B</sup>.)

Morgan joined us on the 13th as temporary Quartermaster from being Sergeant-Major of the 7th Battalion. The Brigade had some aquatic sports on the 12th and Rifleman Royston won the breast-stroke race.

On the 14th we relieved the Lancashire Fusiliers in our old sector in the front line, where we stayed for four days only, owing to a change in the Brigade sector. We were then relieved by the 2nd Bn. Seaforth in the 10th Brigade and went into reserve in Wilderness camp south of Athies. We had a quiet time in the front line and our time was chiefly spent putting out wire and repairing damage done to the trenches by the Boches' trench mortars. Our post on the river Scarpe shot a German one night and brought him in, and our snipers accounted for another. While in reserve we had to provide the usual working parties by day and night, and the rest of the time was taken up in making barbed concertina coils for use in the front line, and various classes of instruction.

Two Officers and 100 men were left behind when we first went into the trenches, to make winter horse lines and this party was increased later to four complete platoons. Two new Officers—Bailey and Smith—joined us on the 19th and Fowler rejoined from the

Divisional Depot Battalion, but soon after was passed unfit by a medical board and sent down to the base.

On 26 August we relieved the Somerset L.I. in the new sector in front of Monchy and had a terrible time of it getting in, the rain came down in torrents and the overland tracks became rivers of mud through which we slithered and slipped in the pitch darkness. We had a quiet time in the line on the whole, but had awful weather which turned the trenches into a pretty foul state—it was not a good line and there was a lot of work to be done. “C” and “I” Companies were in the front line, “A” in support and “B” in reserve. We did not have four consecutive hours fine weather during our tour. On the 30th we were relieved by the 2nd Bn. Duke of Wellington’s and went for one night to Blangy Park camp and to Barrosa camp the next day, where we stayed for four days. (Map 51<sup>B</sup>.)

On 5 September the Division began to be relieved by the 15th Division, who had come down from up north, and we marched that day to Berles-au-Bois, about twelve miles south-west of Arras. A very hot march and a trying one after three months trench life. (Map 51<sup>C</sup>.) Training began almost immediately, to prepare for our move up north. We had a strenuous time, as we had to learn a new attack formation that the Vth Army had ordered all Battalions to practise, and we had not got very much time at our disposal. We, however, managed to find time for five inter-Company competitions—these were:

1. A Route March competition: won by “B” Company with “A” Company second.
2. A Drill competition: won by “B” Company with “I” Company second.
3. A Guard Mounting competition: won by “I” Company with “C” Company second.

4. A combined Obstacle. Assault and Musketry competition: won by "C" Company with "B" Company second after a tie.

5. A Cross Country run: won by "I" Company with "B" Company second.

"B" Company ended up winners with two Firsts and two Seconds.

We had a very pleasant time at Berles-au-Bois—good weather and good billets and we could have all done with another fortnight there.

We were very unlucky at this time to lose General Lambton our Divisional Commander—he took a bad toss out riding and was partially paralysed for a long time. We felt his loss a great deal, and the Battalion owes much to his invariable kindness and help and the great interest that he always displayed in us.

At the same time a new G.S.O.1 arrived at the Division—the sixth G.S.O.1 that this Division had had in under twelve months. Alan Paley came over and saw us once or twice while we were out—his Division, the 21st, preceded us up north by a few days. (Map 57D.)

On 18 September we moved to Mondicourt where we stayed all the 19th and entrained at 4 a.m. on the 20th. We detrained just outside Poperinghe at 1 p.m. and marched about four miles to a camp near Proven. We had to pitch this camp and make everything ourselves and were not very comfortable here. We now joined the XIVth Corps, in which we were last year on the Somme during the October fighting. Lord Cavan came to see us the day after our arrival and told us all the news. Did some training here on the limited ground that was at our disposal. (Map 28.)

Several R.B. Officers came to see us. McGrigor, Pigot and Micklem who were out on a "joy-ride"



from England and were staying with some "Tanks," and Talbot who was chief parson with the Vth Army.

About now we received a draft of one Officer, Lillywhite, and forty-nine other ranks.

We had been rather unfortunate in losing several Officers sick. Fowler had been sent to the base and Wright, Smith and Moors to England. Hine, Bailey and Holmes à Court were away for some time sick, and Evans was transferred to the 2nd Bn. Lancashire Fusiliers.

The Colonel and five Officers and two C.S.M.'s spent a day and a night with the 12th Battalion up in the forward area to reconnoitre the front line and approaches. They found Riley there, and Carey who was Quartermaster.

On the 27th the Battalion was inspected by General Matheson the new Divisional General. The next day we moved to Redan camp near Brielen, where we had a fairly comfortable camp, but were somewhat disturbed by the Boche's moonlight bombing raids—he dropped bombs all round us but did no damage. (Map 28.)

On the evening of 1 October we went into the line east of Langemarck, relieving the King's Own of the 12th Brigade. The so-called "line" consisted merely of isolated shell-holes and short lengths of trench. "I" Company was on the right, "B" on the left, "A" in support and "C" in reserve near Au Bon Gite on the Steenbeke. Battalion Headquarters were in a concrete "Pill Box" just behind the front line. Had a fairly peaceful time there—certainly in the front line, but in rear of it the Boche shelled pretty consistently, and Headquarters was right in the middle of one of his barrage lines. (Map 20.)

We were relieved on the evening of the 3rd by the Somerset L.I. and Hants and East Lancashire, all of whom formed up in their assembly positions in a very small area; this necessitated very careful arrangements. On relief we moved back into our assembly position the other side of the Steenbeke, and became the reserve Battalion of the Brigade for the battle which began at 6 a.m. on the 4th. At that hour we moved forward about 1,000 yards and dug in. At 2.30 p.m. we got orders to move forward and prepare to counter-attack in conjunction with the Warwick on the left, "B," "I" and "A" Companies moved forward, ("C" Company was Brigade carrying party), and got safely through the barrages. "A" Company remained near Au Bon Gite and the other two went on to the old front line. Battalion Headquarters moved to Bird House, just south of Langemarek which they shared with the East Lancashire. At 5 p.m. orders to cancel any further advance were received and "B" and "I" Companies dug themselves in. The night was spent reorganizing the front and "B" Company was moved across the Laudetbeke to form a defensive flank to the Brigade. On the evening of the 5th we got sudden orders to take over the whole Brigade front from the Somerset L.I. and Hants, which was no easy job, as it was a pitch black night and a totally unknown country and everything had to be done at a moment's notice and fresh arrangements made for the delivery of rations, etc. However, by 2.30 a.m. on the 6th everything was all right. "I" Company on the right with "C" in support took over from the Somerset L.I. and "B" Company with "A" in support took over from the Hants. The line was held by a chain of isolated posts from the Poelcappelle-

Condé road (N.E. of Ferdan House) to south of Tragique farm, along the front of Lemnos House to the vicinity of Imbros House. The Warwick was on our left and the 6th Bn. Border of the 33rd Brigade, 11th Division, was on our right. The next night we took over another 150 yards from the Warwick and advanced the whole line of posts to what was to be the barrage line for the next attack, thus clearing up all the ground between the jumping off line and the barrage line. On the left this entailed an advance over 19 Metre hill and down the far slope, thence to Tragique farm where we established two posts and so round to our right. This was a very creditable performance by the Companies concerned and was of the utmost value.

Battalion Headquarters on the 6th moved to Louis farm in the original front line of the 4th.

Whilst reconnoitering the new line of posts on the morning of the 7th with the Colonel, Chamberlain was unluckily killed by a sniper some fifty yards away. The Colonel and his orderly had to drop into a shell hole and then make their way back by a long detour, crawling on their hands and knees, and moving on their stomachs for over 400 yards until they were out of view of the sniper—they were continually sniped at but returned safely.

On the evening of the 7th we were relieved by the 2nd Bn. Essex and 2nd Bn. Lancashire Fusiliers of the 12th Brigade, and moved back to Redan camp, a long and weary walk after seven continuous days in the trenches and shell-holes. It was after 6.30 a.m. on the 8th that the last of us got in. The actual front area during the week was comparatively quiet, as the Boche never really knew where we were, but the shelling

behind and along all the tracks was very heavy indeed, and Battalion Headquarters had a very bad time of it in Louis farm—O'Brien was wounded there. The weather conditions were not good—it was getting cold at night and towards the end of the time we had a lot of rain. The state of the country was indescribable—appallingly heavy going and very swampy, every shell-hole full of water and the sides kept on crumbling in and collapsing. "B" Company had its Headquarters in a deep shell-hole near Lemnos House and in some marvellous manner managed to erect a shelter of sorts in the mud there.

We went into the line on the 1st as follows:—

At Battalion Headquarters: the Colonel, Davison, O'Brien and Pascall (R.A.M.C.).

"A" Company: Egerton-Green, Leech, Greenup.

"B" Company: Chamberlain, Etheridge, Kersley.

"C" Company: Leetham, Heald, Fraser-Luckie.

"I" Company: Craigmile, Denton, Philip.

Strength of Battalion: 592 other ranks.

During the week we had to detach Greenup and seventy men from "A," and Heald and thirty-five men from "C" Company for working parties, and our casualties were one Officer killed—Chamberlain—and five wounded, Egerton-Green, Heald, Leech, O'Brien and Kersley, and 107 other ranks killed and wounded. Heald and Egerton-Green both died of wounds later. We slept most of the 8th, but had to refit and reorganize for the next day, when we paraded at 5.20 a.m. which was zero hour for the attack. The 11th Brigade was in Divisional reserve. We were not required that day, and after being told that we were going to be relieved and going right back we were warned for the next battle. We were to be attached

to the 12th Brigade as the second Battalion in reserve. On the 11th, about 2 p.m. the Colonel had to dash off to see General Carton de Wiart as a further change of plans had taken place and we became the first Battalion in reserve. There was no time for written orders and everything had to be done by word of mouth and from the map. The Battalion moved in the afternoon to a half-way house where we stayed for a couple of hours, till dark, when we went up and relieved the 2nd Bn. Essex round Louis farm. Battalion Headquarters were established in the concrete tunnel there. During the night Companies moved forward into their assembly positions west of the Poelcappelle-Conde road and in rear of the Household Battalion and 1st Bn. Warwick, who were the assaulting Battalions, and the 1st Bn. King's Own, who were in support.

Zero hour was at 5.25 a.m. on the 12th. The General was most anxious that we should get at least one company over the road before the German barrage fell, and as a matter of fact "A," "B" and "I" Companies all got over in very quick time. "B" and "I" Companies followed about 700 yards behind the King's Own, supported by "A" and "C."

Once again Poelcappelle was the stumbling block to the Division on our right—the Germans held on to the brewery and a mass of concrete emplacements on the north of the village, and hung on to them like grim death. This meant that our right flank was completely exposed and came under very heavy machine-gun fire. Some of the King's Own and "I" Company formed a defensive flank facing south-east from Requete farm to Poelcappelle. "C" Company supported "I," "A" and "B" Companies reached their objective and dug in near Compromis and Landing farms. The

situation on the right was always dangerous and the greatest possible credit is due to "I" Company for the very fine way they got into position and improved their position under very heavy fire—they managed to get touch with the 8th Bn. Suffolk who were hung up in Poelcapelle, and by dark that very important flank was quite secure.

During the evening the Germans tried several counter-attacks which came to nothing. Reorganization took place at night and the Battalion became support Battalion—"A" and "B" Companies moved further forward to about 250 yards behind the front line and took up a line between Bower House, Besace farm and in front of Landing farm, where they got touch with "I" Company. "I" Company's right was relieved during the night and it dropped back 150 to 200 yards and acted as support. "C" Company was distributed in support to the other three Companies. These positions were maintained till 6 p.m. on the 13th when the Brigade was relieved.

It is quite impossible to describe in words the situation and the state of the ground in what the Germans are pleased to call the "crater area." It rained steadily the whole time and the darkness at night was intense. This, added to the usual chaos and confusion that always reigns on the battle-field the night of a battle, rendered reorganizing and the locating of troops a superhuman task. Even in daylight it was almost impossible to find where everyone was. Battalions were scattered over many square miles of country without a landmark anywhere. The country was one mass of shell-holes and it really came to having to search every single shell-hole to see if there were troops in them or not. In spite of all these difficulties

a splendid amount of information was obtained and sent back, and no words are good enough for the Company and Battalion runners who were on the go all the time carrying messages and getting them to their destinations. The sniping and machine-gun fire from Poelcappelle was very heavy all the time, and very accurate. The shelling on the 12th was not severe, but on the 13th two or three very heavy barrages were put down.

On relief we moved back to Leipzig camp near Brielen, where exceedingly bad arrangements were made for our comfort. Four battalions were accommodated in the middle of a mud waste with next to no shelter. In spite of it all and in spite of the perfectly appalling conditions everyone lived in, the men were simply wonderful. No praise is high enough for the fine spirit they showed under very trying conditions. Living out in the open in shell-holes full of mud and water, in drenching downpours of rain and bitter cold and under heavy fire most of the time, is not an ideal existence, and the way everyone hung on and stuck it out was marvellous. When we came out on the 13th the Battalion had been in the trenches and living under these conditions for eight days and nine and a half nights, and the next morning they were as cheery as anything. Morgan did us very well with an excellent hot meal of curry stew, rum, and provided dry socks, etc., when we came out, and this was a great blessing to the men. (Map 28.)

The next day we entrained at Elverdinghe and moved to a camp near Proven, but before we left a "Gotha" came over and bombed us in the afternoon—we had twelve casualties.

At Proven we all joined up again and the people who

had been left out and some reinforcements rejoined us.

For the fighting on the 12th October the Battalion was distributed as follows :—

Headquarters : the Colonel and Davison.

“ A ” Company : Denton and Greenup.

“ B ” Company : Etheridge.

“ C ” Company : Leetham and Fraser-Luckie.

“ I ” Company : Craigmile and Philip.

Strength of Battalion—475 other ranks.

Our casualties were—Leetham and Greenup killed and Philip wounded and 156 other ranks killed and wounded and missing. Philip had a wonderful escape, a bullet passing right through his neck. Total casualties since 1 October nine Officers and 263 other ranks.

On the 15th we marched to billets in Poperinghe.

On the 18th we entrained at Peselhock and detrained at Maroeuil at 4.30 a.m. next morning, and then marched five miles to Warlus, where we were in excellent billets. Stayed there three days and on the 22nd marched to the “ Brown ” line behind Monchy and so returned to our old haunts of the summer.

The next day we shifted across the Arras-Cambrai road into another bit of the same line of trenches. Battalion Headquarters being in a quarry at the Feuchy Chapel cross roads. (Map 51<sup>B</sup>.)

On the 23rd we heard that Military Medals had been given as “ immediate ” rewards to Company-Sergeant-Major Payne, Corporal Buss, Corporal Tutt, and Riflemen Robbins and Burtenshaw, for their fine work on 4 October—unfortunately Company-Sergeant-Major Payne was killed on the 12th.

On the 29th Military Medals were awarded to Sergeant Jacob, Sergeant Waters, Riflemen Marsh, Goodacre, Stone, Phillips, Jackson, Mendes, Avery and



Marshall, and Sergeant Blent got a bar to his M.M. These were immediate rewards for 12 October.

Craignile got the Military Cross and Corporal Berry the D.C.M.

There was not very much doing during the time we were in the "Brown" line. We had to provide working parties daily and nightly and we made a lot of concertina coils of barbed wire. For the rest, our activities were somewhat curtailed by the Boche observation balloons that were up all day and prevented any moving about.

During October, eleven new Officers joined us.

In the evening of the 31st we relieved the Somerset L.I. in the Monchy sector, and being the left Battalion of the left sub-sector, had the Hampshire on our right and the 15th Division on our left. The disposition of the companies was as follows: "A" Company was on the right and "B" on the left, with "C" Company in support and "I" in reserve. Headquarters had a large dug-out in Shrapnel trench.

On the evening of the 4th a Company relief was carried out "C" Company relieving "A" and "I" relieving "B." The last four days of the tour were exceptionally quiet and much good work was done to make the trenches ready for the winter: during the whole tour working parties were found to work under R.E. supervision, and the front line and saps were almost revetted and duck-boarded throughout.

On the evening of the 8th the Battalion was relieved by the 1st King's Own and moved back to Arras, billeting in Schramm barracks. The total casualties throughout the eight days' tour were five killed, one died of gas poisoning, and seven wounded, making a total of thirteen.

From the 8th to the 24th November we remained in Schramm barracks; everybody was really comfortable, and when, after being warned to relieve the Hants in the Bois des Boeufs camp, this order was cancelled at the eleventh hour, and the leave allotment was doubled, the last eight days seemed better than the first.

Throughout this fortnight, Company training and Battalion drill were carried out in the training area. On the 13th the Battalion was inspected. Firing on the range, route marching and bathing were also items on the programme. On the 17th we had a parade when medal ribbons were presented by the Corps Commander.

On the 21st everybody was quite certain that within two hours we should be pursuing the Boche back near Cambrai; however, we did not move.

On the 24th we relieved the 2nd Bn. Essex in the Monchy defences, where we spent four days. The time was spent in working on the trenches, pumping out water and revetting where it was broken in; also filling the shell-holes in the roads in Monchy.

During the night 28-29th we were relieved by the 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. and the Middlesex, and we relieved the 8th Bn. Seaforth in the sector immediately on the left of our last one. "A," "I" and "B" Companies were in the front line and "C" in reserve.

On the night of the 30th-1st a company relief was carried out, "B" Company relieving "I" Company. During the 29th and 30th the enemy Artillery was very active, putting down several barrages on the whole of our sector. The shooting was very accurate and the trenches were knocked in at many places. His activity might have been due to the fact that orders were

issued by the Corps "that no firing whatsoever was to take place, as little movement as possible, and no one to expose themselves for a period commencing 5 a.m. on the 30th and ending 7 p.m. on 1 December, when a Gas bombardment will take place. Troops will be withdrawn from the front line in the affected area, and those in close proximity will wear box respirators."

Patrols were sent out frequently and useful information was gained.

During November six new Officers joined us, and 128 reinforcements.

On 2 December we were relieved by the Somerset L.I. and marched back to Wilderness camp, where we remained four days. Most of the time was spent carrying wire, etc., to the front line. The rather unusual activity of the Boche in this sector combined with his efforts at Cambrai set the higher authorities thinking, and orders were issued to wire thoroughly the front and support lines. All available men made concertina barbed wire. The camp was quite comfortable, but rather cold.

On the evening of the 6th we relieved the Somerset L.I. in the Monchy sector again. Dispositions, "C" right front Company, "I" left front Company, "A" in support and "B" in reserve. (Map 51<sup>B</sup>.)

The enemy was a little quieter than during our previous tour, but nevertheless his activity was above normal for this sector.

On the evening of the 8th inst. "A" Company relieved "I" Company in the front line. On the 9th inst. a special order was received from Brigade to the effect that until further notice all dug-outs would be clear of men at "Stand-to" in the morning, and men would remain in their battle positions until the order

to dismiss came through. This was usually about 9 a.m.

The Battalion was relieved on the night of the 10th-11th by the Household Battalion, and we marched back to Schramm Barracks, Arras. The special "Stand to" orders applied here, so we paraded daily at 6.15 a.m.

Kingham, Crosfield and thirty-two other ranks joined us on 7 December.

On the 12th a field-firing scheme was carried out on the field-firing area near Wailly. For the remainder of our stay here practically the whole of the Battalion was on working parties, and fatigues, consequently the training done was practically "nil." It was very cold the whole time. We had our first fall of snow of the winter on the 17th. (Map 51C.)

On 13 December we relieved the 2nd Bn. Essex Regiment in Brigade support. Battalion Headquarters at Fosse farm in the caves. It was a very large place inhabited by R.F.'s and New Zealand Tunnelling Company as well as one of our Companies. The "Stand to" order remained in force. The other three Companies were in the reserve line, south-east of Monchy, and in four "strong points" south of the village. Working parties, carrying wire and working on the trenches were the order of the day whilst we were in support.

On the evening of 22nd we relieved the Somerset L.I. in the right sub-sector and had a very peaceful night. Battalion Headquarters in Crater subway. (Map 51B.)

On the 23rd the enemy heavily bombarded our front and support lines, extending some way to the north, but no attempt was made to raid on our front.

Montford and Herbert rejoined the Battalion about

now, the latter having been away since October, 1916, when he was wounded on the Somme.

On Christmas Day the enemy paid special attention to Battalion Headquarters, dropping fifty 5·9's in very close proximity during the morning and thirteen during the afternoon, some direct hits completely blocking the trench in one place. However, the front and support lines were "let off" and they did their best to make the day as bright as possible. It was quite old-fashioned Christmas weather, snow being on the ground and the atmosphere bright and cold. For the remainder of our stay the enemy was less active.

On the 26th we were relieved by the Somerset L.I. and went back to the "Brown" line south of the Cambrai road. Here we stayed till the 30th, when we relieved the Somerset L.I. again in the front line.

Our four days in reserve were spent in finding working parties and in improving the accommodation which was exceptionally bad when we took it over.

LIST OF OFFICERS ON STRENGTH OF THE BATTALION  
ON DECEMBER 31, 1917.

Rank and Name	Type of Commission	Remarks
Lieut.-Col. R. T. Fellowes, D.S.O., M.C.	R.	Commanding
Major H. S. C. Peyton ... ..	R.	2nd-in-Command
Capt. I. C. Montford... ..	S.R.	O.C. "C" Coy.
" R. J. F. Chance, M.C.... ..	R.	
" W. H. P. Swaine ... ..	T.	
" A. M. Craigmile, M.C. ... ..	S.R.	O.C. "I" Coy.
" J. A. Davison, M.C., Adj. ...	R.	
" F. T. Hill ... ..	R.	O.C. "A" Coy.
" T. W. Carlyle ... ..	T.	O.C. "B" Coy.
" G. Bland ... ..	S.R.	

LIST OF OFFICERS ON STRENGTH OF THE BATTALION  
ON DECEMBER 31, 1917—*continued.*

Rank and Name	Type of Com- mission	Remarks
Lieut. R. W. H. Holmes & Court ...	R.	
" A. S. S. Herbert, M.C. ...	S.R.	
" G. W. Glover, D.S.O. ...	S.R.	Transport Officer
" D. G. M. Fraser Luckie ...	S.R.	
" N. C. Denton ...	S.R.	
[ " L. H. Adams ...	T.	Instructor, Div. Depot Bn.]
" G. H. G. Crossfield ...	S.R.	
" C. N. Etheridge ...	T.	
2nd Lieut. C. C. Naumann ...	S.R.	Assistant-Adjutant
" G. J. Cole ...	S.R.	Bn. Intell. and Lewis-gun Off.
[ " M. L. L. Wynne...	S.R.	With Trench Mor- tar Batty.]
" E. J. Gray ...	S.R.	
" A. Waudby ...	R.	Bn. Signalling Off.
" C. F. Bailey ...	T.	
" H. L. Routh ...	S.R.	
" H. P. Parker ...	T.	
" F. C. Lillywhite...	T.	Bn. Bombing Off.
" H. C. V. Sharps...	T.	
" A. C. Turner ...	S.R.	Intell. Off., 11th Inf. Bde.
" J. A. Lawton ...	T.	
" J. A. Taylor ...	S.R.	
" V. J. Wheeler ...	R.	
" E. A. Mallett ...	T.	
" W. H. Corris ...	R.	
" A. E. Salter ...	R.	
" A. B. Laver ...	T.	
" W. G. Waymouth ...	T.	
" T. K. Davey ...	S.R.	
" G. H. Mercer ...	T.	
" J. T. J. Kingham ...	S.R.	
Lieut. and Qmr. C. Morgan...	T.	
Capt. D. B. Pascall (R.A.M.C.) ...		
Rev. T. B. Heward (C.F.) ...		

## WAR-RECORD OF 1ST BATTALION.

1918.

Our tour in the Cambrai road sector from 30 December to 3 January was a fairly quiet and uneventful one except for the Boche trench mortars that annoyed us rather. We had three casualties from trench mortar gas shells, and had to mend many direct hits on the trenches. The work we did was almost entirely wiring and patrolling—four patrols went out nightly and did excellent work, and we put out 290 coils of wire during the tour. The Household Battalion relieved us and we came back to Schramm barracks in Arras after having spent sixteen days on end in open trenches in bitter weather. Peyton was not with us for ten days as he had to go and command the East Lancashire temporarily.

In the New Year Honours List, Peyton got a M.C., Sergeant-Major Hanley a D.C.M., Company-Quartermaster-Sergeant Leach a M.S.M., while the Colonel, Quartermaster-Sergeant Godden and Company-Quartermaster-Sergeant Wates were Mentioned in Despatches. So was Dale, who was our doctor for a year, and left us in August.

We celebrated Christmas in Arras on 6 January and had a real good time of it. We took the Divisional theatre in the afternoon and the "Follies" gave us a special show. Christmas Dinners were in the evening and the whole Battalion, except the Transport, managed to get into one long room on the top floor of Schramm barracks. Companies were partitioned off and each had its own decorations and arrangements. "B" Company and the Transport—who had

their dinner up at the lines—each produced a Christmas tree loaded with presents. The Household Battalion band most kindly played after dinner and the festivities went on to a late hour. Peyton and Morgan had bought a couple of pigs some two months previously from a neighbouring farmer, and the pork formed the “*pièce de resistance*” of the Christmas Dinners.

The Officers' Dinner took place the same night and twenty-nine of us sat down in the Headquarters' Mess, that had been splendidly decorated by Sergeant Baxter and his staff. A special trio of musicians from the Household Battalion played during dinner.

We had a desperately early start next morning and were all on the move by 8.15 a.m., and marched out to Bois des Boeufs camp on the Cambrai road where we stayed till the 11th. The weather still remained bitter in the extreme with snow storms and hard frosts all the time. This weather on the top of one night's rain and a day's thaw on the 7th turned the country into a terrible state. (Map 51B.)

For three afternoons and evenings we were out on working parties, the whole Battalion going out on two evenings to dig new lines of trenches just behind Monchy.

At this time we were nominally very strong in Officers, no less than forty-one being on our strength. But of these seven were away on courses, three on leave, three sick, two were instructors at schools, one was with a trench mortar battery, one just off to the R.F.C., two were on Brigade employ and one earmarked for trench mortars.

On the 11th we relieved the 2nd Bn. Essex and became support Battalion to the Brigade in the line in the Monchy sector. The trenches we held were north



and north-east of Monchy, with one Company in three strong points behind. A steady thaw set in almost as soon as we got into the trenches and the state of the trenches got worse and worse. As fast as one mended them they all fell in again. The usual working parties were found day and night.

On the 15th we relieved the Somerset L.I. in the right sub-sector. It rained steadily all that day and the trenches fell in quicker than ever, and through the debris, poured a torrent of mud and water.

"B" and "C" Companies were in the front line, each finding two isolated posts in the two "Twin copses." "I" Company was in support and "A" in reserve. The state of affairs and the condition of the trenches got steadily worse each day, and by mid-day on the 17th water in the front line was waist deep in places, and communication trenches were impassable, being brimful of water and mud. Passage along the trenches was impossible by day and so the front line was merely held by day by weak posts. On the 18th we had to evacuate the right Company front entirely except for one post. The carrying of rations, etc., was a great difficulty and labour till some trench-board tracks were laid overland from Monchy. Some of the dug-outs collapsed, which added to our discomfort, as it deprived us of shelter and accommodation. Turner, who was Brigade Intelligence Officer, was unfortunately killed at this time.

On the 19th we were relieved by the Somerset L.I. and moved back into reserve into a line of old trenches near the Feuchy Chapel cross roads. Accommodation here was bad—merely cubby holes in the sides of the trenches, and the trenches themselves were very muddy and filthy. We had working parties by day and night

of over 300 men, who worked on the support lines and laid trench-board tracks, etc.

Bland went off as a "learner" to the Brigade on the 21st and Denton went later as Brigade Intelligence Officer, and we also had to send more Officers away on courses, etc., so that two Companies were reduced to nine Officers apiece for a time.

On the 23rd we went into the line again when the conditions were not very different to what they were before. The trenches were still impassable and most of the posts were isolated. We were very unlucky to lose Crosfield this tour. He was killed whilst out on patrol. He and his patrol were caught by machine-gun fire. Sergeant Ledward who was with him was also wounded, and though he and Acting-Corporal O'Hara did their utmost to bring Crosfield in, and in spite of a very gallant performance by Sergeant Cooke and Corporal Saunders, who crawled out in broad daylight to the German wire, we were unable to bring him in till the evening. He was buried in Monchy cemetery on the 27th. Sergeant Cooke subsequently received a bar to his Military Medal and Corporal Saunders received the Medal for their gallant feat.

The Boche was somewhat active and annoying with his trench mortars and indiscriminate shelling, which did not improve the state of the trenches. We had about a dozen casualties during the tour. We were not sorry to turn our backs on Monchy for the last time on the 27th, when we were relieved by the Household Battalion and moved to Arras. Craven and Cooper joined us here with a draft of eighty-two. We also had a visit from Mansel, McGrigor and Lole, who are all out here now in Pigot's Battalion of "Tanks." C. M. Davies also dropped in for a few minutes one day, as

did Salter, the old Bandmaster of the 2nd Battalion. He was Quartermaster of a Yorkshire L.I. Battalion in the 63rd Division.

We stayed in Arras for three days and had two days Musketry, and on the 31st moved to Bois des Boeufs camp. From here the whole Battalion used to go out daily on working parties in the forward area, either in the evening or in the afternoon when the weather was misty. The work was to clear out the long communication trenches which were still in a terrible state; this was no easy work, especially at night, as the mud was the stickiest and most glutinous kind possible, and in many places the trenches were completely water-logged. We lost Hill, wounded, three men killed—including Rifleman Burtenshaw, one of "C" Company's famous pair of stretcher bearers, and three men wounded, all from shell-fire, the first night. About this time Sergeant Helliwell was awarded the Belgian *Croix de Guerre*.

On 5 February we marched to Simencourt—a march of about eleven miles; the Division began to be relieved by the 15th Division on this date. Found plenty of work to be done on arrival in improving matters and trying to make things more comfortable. There was only one good thing about the place and that was that the training facilities, ranges, etc., were excellent; but from the point of view of comfort and cleanliness it left much to be desired. (Map 51C.)

On the 15th we fired off the A.R.A. platoon competition on the Wailly Field Firing range: this was won by No. 11 platoon. During the first week here we received two drafts, totalling ninety-seven.

Training proper began on the 11th, and we marched out most days to an area that had been allotted to us some three miles away beyond Wanquetin. Lectures

and visits to "Tank" demonstrations and to schools filled in odd days.

On the 13th Peyton left us to command the 2nd Battalion: he had been in the Battalion for nineteen months, and had been 2nd in Command for eighteen months. We were all very sorry to lose him. It is not often nowadays that one comes across a partnership like his and the Colonel's that had lasted eighteen months, and the break up of old associations is always sad.

The training was pretty strenuous, and we had several Brigade exercises and field days, and also three days Field Firing, and many of us were employed as umpires for field days of the other Brigades. We had a lot of football which included one terrific game with the Hants in the second round of the Lambton Cup. This match was played three times with extra time each game, without a goal being scored; we eventually managed to get a goal right at the end of the last game and so won. In the third round, however, the R.A.M.C. were just too good for us and beat us 2—1. Quartermaster-Sergeant Godden was most energetic in arranging matches and general supervision of the team.

A few Rugby footballers, headed by Craignile, played for the Brigade team and won a few matches, and we also had some boxing representatives in the Divisional competitions. We all got very fit during the time we were out, thanks to the considerable amount of recreation training that we did.

Martin joined us at the end of February from the 10th Battalion.

Towards the end of our stay there was a good deal of excitement and preparation in connection with the long expected Boche attack. Defence schemes and

operation orders came pouring in and we spent many days reconnoitring defensive systems on our own Corps front and on the fronts of Corps on our flanks. The final defence scheme contained plans for nine different eventualities, any one of which might occur and for which we were to be prepared. We lived with our loins girded ready to move at a moment's notice. Breakfasts had to be not later than 7 a.m. and the men all had to have the tools, extra S.A.A., bombs and the various what-nots that they carry into action issued out to them. We were not allowed to move far from billets and all our kits were packed every morning. This tension and suspense wore off gradually and on the 17th we reverted to a normal life.

The Officers had two games of football against the Sergeants. One a "rag" one, when the Officers chose the Sergeants' side and *vice versa*, and one was a proper game. The Officers won the first game and the second was a draw.

We had another 100 reinforcements the first ten days in March.

On the 19th our rest came to an end, when we were relieved by the Welsh Guards and marched to Arras, being billeted in Schramm barracks, and the next day were relieved by the 2nd Battalion Coldstream Guards and went into the line relieving the 2nd Battalion Grenadier Guards in the centre Brigade sector, north of the Scarpe. (Map 51B.)

Trevor-Jones, Shirley and Stratford joined us from the 10th Battalion on the 20th.

We commenced the tour as reserve Battalion, having Battalion Headquarters and "A" and "B" Companies in Stirling Camp and "C" and "I" Companies in Pudding trench.

At 5.10 a.m. on the 21st we were awakened by a heavy artillery duel and we began to wonder if the long talked of Boche attack had started.

On the 24th we moved up into support, and the next three days were spent moving Headquarters and all the Companies about from place to place till the authorities could finally decide what the best dispositions were. By the 27th we were settled down. "B" Company was attached to the Hants up in the Chemical Works and was on the right of the Brigade front. The other three Companies were distributed in Fampoux and in a trench north of it.

The Colonel returned in the afternoon, having been recalled off leave after two days at home.

South of the Scarpe our front line was some 2,500 yards behind us—this was caused by the evacuation of Monchy a few days previously. It was sad to see all the ground that we had lived in and worked on throughout the winter now in Boche hands.

### THE GERMAN ATTACK ON ARRAS.

The German attack on Arras began on 28 March. The bombardment began at 3 a.m. and the attack was delivered about 7.20. On our left the Boche made some progress on the 12th Brigade's front, and this caused the Hants to fall back gradually to their reserve line where they completely hung up the attack for the rest of the day. On our immediate right the Seaforth of the 10th Brigade beat off all attacks and only withdrew late in the afternoon from the Mount Pleasant promontary as they were in danger of being cut off owing to the more rapid progress of the attack south of the river.

"B" Company hung on to their position all day but had an unpleasant time of it being under very heavy shell fire all the time. They lost Stratford killed and about fifty other casualties here.

In the afternoon "I" Company was sent up to fill a gap between the Hants and Lancashire Fusiliers; they found the trench occupied by Boches, but in conjunction with bombing attacks from the flanks, two platoons counter-attacked over the open and drove them out. Later on two platoons were sent to form a defensive flank along the railway and on the right of "B" Company.

During the night a withdrawal was ordered to conform with the positions of other troops and the Battalion became front line battalion and held a 2,000 yards front extending north of and through Fampoux and along the Scarpe from Fampoux westwards. This move was completed by about 3 a.m. on the 29th. At 6 a.m. a party of the enemy got into our line at the junction of "A" and "B" Companies, and began bombing along the trench. They were ejected for a short time, but being reinforced got in again and brought up some machine-guns. "B" Company put up a stout fight but were not successful in stemming the tide in spite of the efforts of Etheridge and Sergeant Utting and others. Etheridge was most unfortunately killed and Davey, the only other Officer, badly wounded. Craigmile who was in support with his Company went to find out the situation and was also killed. Finally, Cole collected all available men in a communication trench on our left, formed a defensive flank there and covered a counter-attack made by two platoons of the Somerset L.I. The remainder of our men co-operated by bombing down the trench and by 9.30 the situation

was restored, and we captured two machine-guns. This latter piece of work was entirely due to Acting-Corporal Bridgewater and Rifleman Relf of "A" Company, who, with great gallantry, attacked the Boches and prevented them extending their gains. When their supply of bombs ran out they went back for some more, and returned to the attack, finally driving the enemy out and capturing the machine-guns. They displayed magnificent courage and daring and were later each awarded the Military Medal. The same decoration was also won by Sergeant Utting and Rifleman Elliott of "B" Company. Cole was subsequently awarded the Military Cross.

The next three days were comparatively uneventful except for some very heavy shelling all round the support Company and Battalion Headquarters. It was quiet in the front line except for snipers and machine-guns. Gray was sniped through the head and killed on the 31st. We had all our work cut out reorganizing the new line, establishing bombing blocks and sending out patrols to locate the enemy. Down in Fampoux it was rather like a game of hide-and-seek among the ruins. No one quite knew where the other side was and one had to creep and crawl, and skip and jump about to avoid being spotted and sniped at.

On 1 April we were relieved and moved back into reserve round Athies and east of it. From the 28th our casualties had been four Officers killed and one died of wounds (Davey) and about 150 other ranks. Though far from comfortable in our reserve position we had a fairly quiet time and found working parties at night for digging. There is no doubt about it that the Boche took a very nasty knock on Good Friday and his casualties were enormous from our machine-gun and



rifle fire; and though he gained a little ground, most of which we voluntarily evacuated, his main plan completely failed and he took some time to recover from it.

On the 5th we moved up into support into some very exposed and badly knocked about trenches. On the 7th we were partially relieved by some Canadians (8th Infantry Battalion) and the Hants, and on the 8th, the 14th and 15th Canadian Infantry Battalions relieved us and we went back by omnibus to "Y" huts near Etrun. Here we were consistently shelled by a high velocity gun and we moved on the 10th to Haute Avesnes. A draft of 203 joined us here. (Map 51C.)

On the 11th we were warned to be ready to move at four hours' notice, and on the 12th we moved at one hour's notice and all went off in omnibuses up north, the Transport following us by road. (Map 36A.)

We eventually fetched up at Busnes outside Lillers about 6 p.m. Orders arrived shortly afterwards and at 7 p.m. we started off to take over the line from a Brigade of the 3rd Division. Information and news was very contradictory and very vague, and no one quite knew what the situation was. The Battalion took over a position along the La Bassée canal between Robecq and Pacaut wood from two Companies of the 2nd Bn. Suffolk. It took us some time to sort ourselves out in the dark and settle down in the unknown country, but once it got light things were easier. Headquarters was in a cottage in Bellerive. "B" and "I" Companies were along the canal and "A" and "C" were in support. The Somerset L.I. were on our left and the 1st Bn. Gordons of the 3rd Division on our right.

There was a very thick mist during the morning of

the 13th and we were able to get well settled in under cover of it. It took some time to fix on headquarters for Companies, but they eventually established themselves in some very comfortable farm houses and cottages. We found ourselves facing the Boche along the southern end of his salient and almost at the apex of it where he had made his biggest advance south-west of Merville. It was a curious situation altogether and there is no doubt he had very little idea where he was and his units were very mixed up and disorganized.

On the 14th we extended our left and took over the defence of some more bridges up to Robecq, while the Somerset L.I. had a very successful "minor operation" that brought in 150 prisoners and twenty machine-guns. We had some rare good musketry practice from the canal bank at Boches who were bolting from various houses. The change from trench warfare was a very pleasant one and it seemed odd to be living above ground in cottages instead of below ground in dug-outs. The inhabitants had left behind nearly all their live stock and at Headquarters we had cows and calves, goats, rabbits and chickens to look after and feed. "C" Company's Headquarters was apparently a store for some shop or other as they found large supplies of champagne, soap, candles, dried fruits, flour, etc.

On the 16th we were relieved by the 2nd Bn. Essex and moved back to Busnettes, stayed there one day and got turned out at 3.15 in the morning on the 18th and rushed off to a position behind the 10th Brigade. The Boches made a determined effort to cross the canal that morning, but failed and lost 150 prisoners. We remained in position all the morning and then moved back a few hundred yards to shelters in Lannoy. We

remained under the orders of the 10th Brigade till the evening of the 19th when we relieved the 2nd Bn. Duke of Wellington's and 1st Bn. Warwick, along the canal east of Hinges.

We kept changing our positions owing to change of boundaries, etc., and on the 21st, Battalion Headquarters moved from the canal bank to Hinges. On the 22nd we took part in a most successful attack with the Hants on our left which resulted in the capture of the southern portion of Pacaut wood and the advance of our line up to La Pannerie. "C" Company and two platoons of "B" Company took part in this fight and did splendidly, capturing over sixty prisoners and several machine-guns. During the night "C" Company crossed the canal at Pont l'Hinges and the two platoons of "B" Company followed behind the right-hand column of the Hants that worked along the right of the wood. At 5.18 a.m. the advance began. "C" Company very quickly reached their objective, capturing a row of houses along the Hinges—La Pannerie road for about 500 yards. These they occupied, but later on, owing to very heavy shelling, they had to leave them and dug in in front of them behind hedges, and consolidated a strong position facing east and north-east, and formed a defensive flank back to the canal. In the meantime "B" Company had worked round the outside of the wood and on reaching the Riez-du Vinage—La Pannerie road turned right-handed and quickly established a line of posts along and in front of the road joining up with the northern post of "C" Company and also establishing an advanced Lewis-gun post in a farm house some 200 yards in front. Sergeant Woodall and Sergeant Stroud of "B" Company particularly distinguished themselves; the

former capturing over thirty prisoners himself and taking entire charge when Adams was killed. Sergeant Stroud went on ahead of his platoon during the advance and dug out the Boches from camouflaged shell-holes, forcing them to surrender. Acting-Corporals Dunbar and Dyde, both of "B" Company, did splendid work. For these operations Sergeant Smith of "C" Company was awarded a bar to his Military Medal and Sergeant Metcalfe, Acting-Corporal French and Rifleman Jemmett (all of "C" Company), Sergeant Stroud, Acting-Corporal Dunbar and Acting-Corporal Dyde of "B" Company, Acting-Corporal Roder and Rifleman Clements of Headquarters, were awarded Military Medals.

For the rest of the day we were subjected to the most intense shell-fire, especially along the canal bank, and casualties were rather severe, especially amongst two companies of the Somerset L.I. who were attached to us for the day. Our losses in Officers were very unfortunate, Trevor-Jones, Adams and Sharps being killed, and Chance, Martin and Cooper wounded.

That night the line was reorganized and the two companies of the Somerset L.I. were taken out. The next night "B" and "C" Companies were relieved and went into support and on the 26th the Battalion was relieved by the 2nd Bn. Suffolk and 8th Bn. King's Own of the 3rd Division, and we moved back to Gonnehem.

From the 12th to the 26th we had been in the front line for eleven days and only had really one day out—on the 17th.

The Battalion was distributed as follows, from the 12th :—

At Headquarters : the Colonel, Davison, Cole (till 17th), Naumann (from 17th) and Scott (R.A.M.C.).

"A" Company : Taylor, Corris, Salter, Craven.

"B" Company : Carlyle, Adams, Routh.

"C" Company : Chance, Cooper, Martin, Lilly-white.

"I" Company : Trevor-Jones, Sharps, Parker.

Our casualties were : Three Officers killed (Trevor-Jones, Sharps and Adams) ; four Officers wounded (Chance, Salter, Cooper and Martin) ; twenty-nine other ranks killed ; ninety-one other ranks wounded ; one taken prisoner.

"A" and "I" Companies did some most useful service whilst on the Canal bank, doing some excellent patrol work and establishing five advanced posts the other side of the Canal.

Seventeen new Officers joined us about now and six of them came up when we came out of the line, the remainder being kept at the Divisional Depot Battalion. The details under Montford were away from us all the time and most nights were used for digging work behind.

The Boche did not allow us to stay long in Gonnehem ; he shelled us out of it on the second day, and that evening we moved back to Busnettes. Here four more of the new Officers joined us and 103 reinforcements.

On 2 May we relieved the 2nd Bn. Seaforth and went into the line just north of Riez-du Vinage. Montford took the Battalion in as the Colonel was ordered to stay out for a rest. Carlyle went back in charge of the details. On the 6th we moved back into support, with three Companies along the Canal bank and one back in billets. Letts joined us on the 6th.

Battalion Headquarters got two direct hits on it next day, one of which destroyed all the mess crockery, etc. It was a miracle that no other casualties were sustained. We then moved to another cottage a little less exposed. On the 8th the Battalion had to go up into the line again as everyone expected an attack to be made by the Boche on either the 9th or 10th. All three Battalions of the Brigade were in the line, each on a one Company front. We were in the centre. No attack did take place, and on the 11th we were relieved by the King's Own and came back to Busnettes.

Kewley and Lagden came over one day from the 3rd Battalion to see us.

On the 15th we relieved the Warwick in the front line on the right of Pacaut wood, and held the ground that had been captured by "B" Company on 22 April. We stayed in eight days, during which time a real lot of good work was done. We put out a mile of double apron barbed wire fence, and turned two lines of isolated posts into complete continuous trenches—total length of over 1,300 yards. We were very lucky in the weather, which was exceptionally fine and very hot, with bright moonlight nights.

We got rather badly gas-shelled one day and Battalion Headquarters got a direct hit with a gas shell at 3 a.m. in the morning. Most of the gas casualties were in "I" Company.

"A" Company was in the front line, "B" in support, "C" along the Canal bank and "I" in reserve. We went in with nineteen Officers and 578 other ranks.

This was one of the best tours the Battalion had ever done in the trenches, and we certainly had a good lot to show for all our work when we came out.

On the 23rd we were relieved by the 2nd Bn. Lancashire Fusiliers and came back to Busnettes. On the 27th we went into the line again and became centre battalion of the Brigade round Riez-du Vinage. We did a twelve days' tour this time and again had perfect weather the whole time. Once again we changed two lines of isolated posts into continuous trench lines along which one could go in daylight, and also put out some 1,500 yards of wire. Brown was unfortunately killed during this tour. "C" and "I" Companies each did six days in the front line, while "B" Company was in support and "A" in reserve. Battalion Headquarters was in a cottage on the La Bassée Canal. We were relieved on 8 June by the King's Own, but before we got out the Boche tried to attack us and raid some of our posts. He put down quite a heavy trench mortar and gas-shell barrage, but thanks to our wire and Lewis-gun fire he failed to make any progress. He had worried us considerably all the time we had been in with machine-gun fire round that part of the line, and undoubtedly thought that we had been unable to put any wire out. As a matter of fact we had persevered, and had got a certain amount out, and he ran slap into it that night.

The Colonel went on the 7th to command the Brigade for a fortnight, whilst the Brigadier was on leave.

In the Birthday Honours list the Colonel got a mention and a brevet-majority, and Acting-Corporal Foster got the D.C.M. and Quartermaster-Sergeant Godden was awarded the Meritorious Service Medal.

On relief we returned to our old billets at Busnettes, where we stayed for five days. For two days "A" and "B" Companies had to remain on the Canal bank under the 12th Brigade.

On the 15th we relieved the Warwick on the right sector of the right Brigade, near La Pannerie. The weather was splendid for the first week, but after that it rained at intervals. On the night of the 14th the three right posts of "A" Company holding the front line went forward 200 yards to conform with the minor operation of the 3rd Division; this was accomplished without difficulty. In the early hours of the 15th Sergeant Cooke, M.M., and four others went out and did a small daylight raid on their own, capturing twenty prisoners and killing over twenty Boches; they were only stopped by a machine-gun, which mortally wounded one of the party. Sergeant Cooke showed further coolness in getting the wounded man into our line, and later was awarded the D.C.M.

The next two days the Boches spent in "hating" the Canal bank and its vicinity, making it very dangerous work for carrying parties and others who continually had to cross the canal. However, after these two days matters became normal and the remainder of the tour passed without incident.

On the 25th, just before relief, Battalion Headquarters was heavily shelled by 4.2 in. guns and had two men wounded; the concrete part of the house gave everyone a great sense of security. We were relieved by the Lancashire Fusiliers and moved back to billets in Busnettes. During the tour much work was done on the front and support lines, duck-boarding, construction of traverses and making fire positions; 1,400 yards of double apron wire was put out in front of the front line, and on the eastern edge of Pacaut wood; a switch line was dug to the 3rd Division and a new portion of the captured front line.

At Busnettes we spent six very pleasant days; the



first two were spent in reorganizing the Battalion according to the new establishment which had just come in. On the afternoon of the 29th we had Battalion Sports, the Divisional Band also attending, and the afternoon was a great success in every way.

During the last fortnight of June we were victims of a strange form of influenza. Nearly everyone was affected more or less seriously and about 100 of the Battalion were sent down sick.

On the 29th there appeared in the papers the award of the V.C. to Sergeant Woodall who unfortunately, was not with the Battalion to receive our congratulations as he had gone to England for a commission. Sergeant Woodall was with the two platoons of "B" Company which attacked on the right of Pacaut wood on 22 April. The following is the recommendation that was sent in at the time :—

"For his magnificent courage and fine leadership on the morning of April 22 during the attack in the vicinity of La Pannerie. This N.C.O. was in command of a platoon which during the advance was hung up by a machine-gun. On his own initiative this N.C.O. captured the gun and eight men. After the objective had been gained heavy fire was encountered from a farmhouse some 200 yards in front. Sergeant Woodall collected ten men and with great dash and gallantry rushed the farm and took thirty prisoners. Shortly afterwards when the Officer in charge was killed, Sergeant Woodall took entire charge of the front, reorganized the two platoons and disposed them very successfully. Throughout the day in spite of intense shelling and machine-gun fire this N.C.O. was constantly on the move encouraging the men and finding out and sending back very valuable information. The

example set by Sergeant Woodall was simply magnificent and had a marked effect on the troops. I cannot speak too highly of this N.C.O.'s splendid behaviour and I attribute the success of the operations on this portion of the front as almost entirely due to his coolness and courage and utter disregard for his own personal safety."

On 1 July we relieved the 2nd Bn. Duke of Wellington's in the centre of the Riez-du Vinage sector where we found the trenches and wire in very good condition. The 1st Hampshire Regiment was on our right and the 1st Somerset L.I. on our left.

During the tour the Boche was very quiet by day but fairly active by night, with harassing fire on roads and tracks leading to the front line, using mostly field guns and machine-guns, varying them occasionally with a few gas shells. His aeroplanes made fairly regular attempts to cross our lines about 7 a.m. and 8 p.m. for the first few days, but rarely succeeded in getting far, as all rifles and Lewis-guns were "turned on" at the first sign of approach. Good work was done preparing the trenches for trench-boards, strengthening the existing wire and making more accommodation for the men. Patrols did very useful work keeping the upper hand in "No Man's Land" for about 200 yards in front of our line. During the tour we lost eighteen other ranks, five being killed and thirteen wounded.

On the night of the 13th we were relieved by the 1st King's Own Regiment, two Companies remaining on the Canal bank, the remainder of the Battalion moving back to billets in Busnettes. The first day was spent cleaning up and reorganizing, training commencing on the 2nd day, consisting of Army drill, saluting, musketry on the range, Lewis-gun and snipers' classes. Officer's revolver and pool bull com-

petitions were held in the evenings, at which keen competition was displayed and some good scores made, the latter applying more especially to the "pool bull." On the 20th we relieved the 1st Bn. Royal Warwick Regiment in the Pacaut sector, the 2nd Bn. Suffolk Regiment (3rd Division) being on our right, and the Hants on our left. We went in nineteen Officers and 555 other ranks. The enemy was rather more active in this sector, especially on the road through Les Harisoirs, the Canal bank, in the vicinity of Hate farm and very close to our ration dump, though fortunately not quite close enough to do any damage. On the 24th a light barrage was put down on the support line and Canal, consisting of all calibres up to 5.8 inch, with enemy aeroplane observation, but very little damage was done. Hostile aircraft were inactive. Patrols from the Battalions on our flanks were getting prisoners from isolated posts situated in shell-holes with, to us, irritating regularity as our patrols could find "no one at home." However one suspected post was marked down and carefully watched and found to be occupied by day only, so at 8.20 a.m. on the 30th Routh and eight other ranks went out. They rushed the post and captured five Boches; four surrendered immediately they approached, but the other had to be pulled out of a small shelter. A patrol lay out ready to capture any relief that might appear but nothing was seen or heard. Good work was done preparing the trenches for trench boards, putting in shelters and strengthening the wire, a complete new belt being put out in front of the front and support lines. Over 200 coils of barbed concertina wire were made and dumps established in shell-holes behind the front and support lines. We came out of the line nineteen Officers and 533 other ranks, having had four other ranks killed and eighteen wounded.

The total casualties during the month were: Officers, *nil*; other ranks, killed nine; wounded thirty-one; missing one. Beazley, West, Woodside, Freear, Burch, Garton, Short, Winsloe and 170 other ranks joined us during the month, and Bland also rejoined after his six months in England.

On 3 August we were relieved by the 2nd Bn. Lancashire Fusiliers and moved back to billets in Busnettes.

On the 7th the enemy commenced withdrawing on our front, so at 2 p.m. the Battalion was ordered to take up its "battle position." At 7 p.m. however, orders were received to return to billets.

On the 9th we relieved the outpost companies of the 2nd Bn. Seaforth; the 2nd Bn. Duke of Wellington's and 1st Bn. Royal Warwickshire Regiment becoming outpost Battalion in the Vinage sector. We went in thirty Officers and 607 other ranks. The line taken over was a series of shell-holes on a general line east of Quentin falling back on the right to the western edge of Le Cornet Malo. The first thing to be done was to establish the line of the Turbeauté stream down the fork roads, and thence along the Hinges road; the left Company's job was easy and patrols were sent over the river and posts were established; the Boche objected to this and the Turbeauté again became the front line. However in the afternoon of the 10th posts were again established and held permanently. On the right "I" Company had a pretty stiff task and the opposition was distinctly strong. By great perseverance the line of the Hinges road was at last reached on the 11th, and posts were even established in front of it. Unfortunately Schuster was killed whilst leading his platoon forward. Burch was wounded, and also Letts,

who had gone forward from Battalion Headquarters to ascertain the situation. Throughout the time the Boche was very active with machine-guns and snipers ; his artillery was chiefly concentrated on targets like Quentin village where there were no troops at all, though it made going round companies a very difficult task.

On the 18th we were relieved by the Somerset L.I., and moved back as left support Battalion, with "A" Company in the old front line, and three Companies in the old reserve line battle position behind, and Robecq switch. Here the Battalion spent six days resting and training. Big salvaging parties were organized to clear the original Boche forward area and any amount of salvage of all kinds was collected and sent down. With regard to this, there is one special item of interest. We buried 103 Boche corpses, a fact which shows how slack the enemy had become in matters of discipline and decency.

On the 18-19th we again went into the line, relieving the 1st Bn. Hampshire Regiment. The Boche machine-guns and snipers were very active up to 7 a.m. on the 19th when fire ceased completely. Immediately patrols went out and established a line 150 yards west of Paradis road. At 7.30 p.m. the advance was continued and posts were established east of Paradis road. Battalion Headquarters had by this time moved forward to a position between Quentin and the Turbeauté river. The Boche now turned his attention to the Paradis road and put down barrages on it every two hours. The next day the line was again advanced about 900 yards, but the Boche showed far more resistance and the casualties becoming fairly heavy the order was given to dig in and hold on. All the time close

touch was maintained with troops on either flank and many very useful lessons were learnt.

In the evening the Battalion was relieved by the 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. and moved back as right support Battalion, where reorganization was immediately carried out. Winsloe and Wheeler had both been wounded and Holmes à Court took temporary command of "I" Company.

On the 21st we had a very quiet day as support Battalion, and the following afternoon moved back to billets in Busnettes. During the tour we had seven Officer casualties, Schuster being killed, Letts, Burch, Freear, Garton, Wheeler and Winsloe wounded, and ninety-four other ranks, ten being killed, sixty-two wounded and two missing. We came out thirteen Officers and 513 other ranks. We now heard definitely that we were going back for a month or so of intensive training.

The following day we started early and marched to Fauquenhem. Billets here were not good, but we were told to make the best of them, as it would probably be our home during training. Great preparations were made in selecting areas and making out schemes, and the next day at 1.30 p.m. we got orders to move early on the morning of the 25th, the Transport having left the evening before. (Maps 36<sup>A</sup>, 36<sup>B</sup> and 51<sup>C</sup>.)

We marched early on the 25th to Lillers, entrained there, and detraining at Bryas marched to Foufflin-Ricametz, in the St. Michael area. The morning of the 26th was spent in refitting and platoon training. At 3.30 p.m. came orders for yet another move and at 6.30 p.m. we set out by route march to Villers au Bois and did not get into the Hut camp till 1 a.m. next morning. Luckily packs and tools had been carried for us. Yet

another move was made on the 28th, this time by omnibus from Villers au Bois to just south of Blangy lock, east of Arras. From here we marched to an assembly area in artillery formation west of Orange hill thence on across Monchy plateau keeping the village on the left down to our old front line. It was very dark indeed, and if it had not been for the German light railway it is impossible to say what would have happened.

We went in as follows:—

#### HEADQUARTERS.

Lieut.-Col. R. T. Fellowes, D.S.O., M.C.

Captain J. A. Davison, M.C.

Lieut. C. C. Naumann.

Lieut. A. Waudby, D.C.M.

#### "A" COMPANY.

Captain A. S. S. Herbert, M.C.

Lieut. C. A. Pickering

2nd Lieut. A. E. Salter

2nd Lieut. W. G. J. Tustin

#### "B" COMPANY.

Lieut. B. G. Baker

2nd Lieut. J. Harvey

2nd Lieut. J. C. Shoobridge

#### "C" COMPANY.

Captain A. W. M. Rissik

Lieut. R. W. Holmes & Court

2nd Lieut. A. R. BurrIDGE

2nd Lieut. P. Romney

#### "I" COMPANY.

Captain W. H. Corris

2nd Lieut. H. V. Morlock

2nd Lieut. W. J. Woodside, M.M.

2nd Lieut. F. S. Wilson

Medical Officer: 1st Lieut. J. W. Aldridge (M.O.R.C., U.S.A.)

Other ranks ... 650

We were now in the Canadian Corps.

On the evening of the 29th we proceeded to take over the front of the Sensée river. The relief this night was only completed at 5 a.m. on the 30th, on account of gas shelling and the darkness, and also to the fact that the country was to a great extent unknown. That day orders were issued for Companies to push on to a line 400 yards east of the Sensée river, and at 1 p.m. they reported that they were unable to do this on account of machine-gun and artillery fire. (Map 51<sup>B</sup>.)

The attack on Eterpigny was to come off at 4 p.m., and at the last minute the barrage line was brought back to a point 150 yards east of the Sensée river, instead of 400 yards. At 4 p.m. the barrage came down, and unfortunately the two leading Companies were a little too far forward and a number of casualties were inflicted by our own barrage. The barrage itself was extraordinarily accurate, and on the whole was well followed up. The objective was gained at all points, except on the immediate right of the village where a sunken road was mistaken for the one which was the objective. The road, however, was made good the same night.

On the night of the 30th-31st, the Battalion was relieved by the 1st Bn. Hampshire Regiment, the last Company at about 10 a.m. on the 31st. The lateness of the relief was due to the incessant shell-fire on the Bois Soufflard, there being only two bridges which could be crossed at all, and both these were subjected to heavy shelling and machine-gun fire.

1 September.—The Battalion was relieved on the western slopes of Seventy ridge on the night of the 31st by the 2nd Bn. Lancashire Fusiliers. This relief was complete by 4 a.m. on the 1st and was delayed on account of the fact that the relieving Battalion did not know the ground at all. The whole of the day the Battalion was situated in communication trenches running east and west on Seventy ridge, and practically continuous shell fire was directed on this area during the day.

At 10 o'clock that night the Battalion moved off through Remy to the assembly position 200 yards in rear of the front line on the right of Eterpigny. It was the first starlight-night we had had, and Companies



and Headquarters were all in position by 1 a.m. on 2 September. There was very little shelling on our area, and at about 3 a.m. the "Tanks" took up a position about 150 yards in rear of Battalion Headquarters. They made a considerable noise as they approached and it would have been quite possible for the enemy to have heard them, being only 350 yards away.

At 5 a.m. on the 2nd the barrage dropped. The enemy barrage was weak and scattered. His machine-guns, however, were extremely accurate. The pace of our barrage was very slow and the Battalion perhaps got slightly in advance of where it should have been. However, orders were issued for a halt of one hour just behind the Drocourt-Quéant front line. This was carried out, but the two right Companies moved onwards a little too soon and were caught in the most terrific machine-gun fire. There were also two batteries of 7.7 mm. guns firing point-blank at them. The two Company Commanders were not heard of for some time, though one managed to rejoin after having been captured by two German machine-gunners. The Colonel was wounded at about 7.30 a.m. At 8 a.m. the two left Companies tried to move forward with the 1st Bn. Hampshire Regiment but as soon as they left the Drocourt-Quéant support the most terrific and accurate machine-gun fire was opened on them and they were unable to move in the face of it. The "Tanks" had by this time halted on Drocourt-Quéant support. These two Companies, with one Company of the Hampshire Regiment, tried hard to get forward, but it was utterly impossible. Severe casualties were inflicted, and the two Companies withdrew to Drocourt Quéant support where they reorganized and

consolidated. After a long time the Battalion was collected and reorganized in one trench, and there was no further incident until warning was passed down the trench to say that the Germans were massing for a counter-attack on Dury. By this time every man had a fire position and was ready for the heavy counter-attack of which we had been previously warned. No counter-attack, however, was delivered.

At 3 a.m. on the morning of the 3rd inst. verbal orders were received for the Battalion to attack the trench line in front behind a barrage, at 5 a.m. The four Company Commanders came to Battalion Headquarters and were allotted their frontages, and "moppers-up" for the dug-outs, etc. were detailed. However, at zero no barrage dropped, so the four Companies were ordered to proceed in front of the front line (Drocourt-Quéant support) where they would be under better control if necessary, but at zero plus four minutes, word was received that the attack was cancelled. Patrols were at once sent out, and it was found that the Germans had gone. Orders were at once issued that the trench line in front should be made good; after this the line of the road further on. This line was to be held until the patrols had made good the ridge east of the Bois de Recourt. By 12 noon, however, the four Companies were holding the sunken road east of the Bois de Recourt, with the 1st Somerset L.I. on the left and the Canadians on the right. During the afternoon Battalion Headquarters moved to the Bois de Recourt. (Map 51<sup>B</sup>.)

## CASUALTIES DURING ADVANCE.

29 August	2nd Lieut. J. C. Shoobridge	Wounded
30 August	Captain W. H. Corris	Wounded (died of wounds 31 August)
	Lieut. G. W. Glover, D.S.O.	Wounded (died of wounds 31 August)
	Lieut. C. A. Pickering	Killed
	2nd Lieut. J. Harvey	Wounded (died of wounds)
	2nd Lieut. A. E. Salter	Wounded
	2nd Lieut. W. G. J. Tustin	Wounded
31 August	Lieut. R. W. H. Holmes & Court	Wounded (gas)
2 Sept.	Lieut.-Col. R. T. Fellowes, D.S.O., M.C.	Wounded
	Captain A. S. S. Herbert, M.C.	Wounded
	Lieut. B. G. Baker	Wounded
	2nd Lieut. E. J. Freear	Wounded
	2nd Lieut. E. C. Garton	Wounded
	2nd Lieut. P. Romney	Wounded
	Captain A. W. M. Rissik	Missing believed prisoner
Other ranks :		
	Killed	40
	Wounded	265
	Died of wounds	2
	Missing	32
	To C.C.S., N.Y.D. gas	63
		<hr/> 402 <hr/>

During August Pickering, Wilson, Tustin, Romney, Podbury and Davies joined us and Freear and Garton rejoined from hospital. Other ranks reinforcements numbering 251 also joined the Battalion.

For the operations in August when we were engaged in pushing back the Boches round Merville, Military Medals were awarded to the following:—

Rifleman Morrish  
Rifleman Wratten  
Rifleman Laird

Corporal Ison  
Rifleman Gibson  
Corporal Cornwell

For the fighting at Eterpigny on August 30 and in the capture of the Drocourt-Quéant line on 2 and

3 September the following immediate rewards were given to the Battalion :—

Captain A. S. S. Herbert, M.C.	...	Bar to M.C.
1st Lieut. J. W. Aldridge (U.S.A., M.O.R.C.) (attached)	... ..	M.C.
2nd Lieut. H. V. Morlock	... ..	M.C.
Corporal Cornwell, M.M.	... ..	Bar to M.M.
Rifleman Marshall, M.M.	... ..	Bar to M.M.
Sergeant Stone	... ..	M.M.
Sergeant Mann	... ..	M.M.
Corporal Hamblett	... ..	M.M.
A/Corporal Carter	... ..	M.M.
A/Corporal Barnes	... ..	M.M.
Rifleman Haslam	... ..	M.M.
Rifleman Nixon	... ..	M.M.
Rifleman Sheard	... ..	M.M.
Rifleman Mayer	... ..	M.M.
Rifleman Cleall	... ..	M.M.
Rifleman Kite	... ..	M.M.
Rifleman Henson	... ..	M.M.

On the 4th we marched back to Tilloy and took omnibus for Fréwillers where we hoped to have a good long rest. We arrived about 8.30 p.m. thankful to find very comfortable billets for every one. (Map 36<sup>B</sup>.)

Quite early the next morning the Divisional General arrived and called for all Officers. He said he was delighted at the splendid work the Battalion had done, mentioning especially the making good of the jumping-off place for the attack on Eterpigny, and was full of praise for all concerned. The Brigadier, who arrived later, also had nothing but praise for everyone.

Major G. W. Liddell arrived on the 7th inst. to take command of the Battalion. What remained of the Battalion was reorganized and very quickly drafts arrived, so that we were soon again up to fighting strength. Unfortunately we had lost nearly all our senior N.C.O.'s, so a lot depended on the juniors.

On the 18th training commenced, and we decided to hold the oft-postponed Battalion Sports on the 19th, but on the 16th orders were received to prepare for a move on that date. However, we decided we would have them and hurried preparations were made for the afternoon of the 17th when they were held. Despite the short notice and curtailed programme they were a great success, not the least amusing event being the race for the village children. They were all given a prize and scrambled for coppers after the race. Some very keen inter-Company football matches were played, producing good football.

On the 18th we prepared for an early move next morning. We had been out exactly two weeks and enjoyed it immensely. It was quite the best village we had been in for a very long time. The weather on the whole was very good, and the training not too strenuous, everyone benefiting from the rest.

We moved off at 6.10 a.m. on the 19th and had about one-and-a-quarter hours' march and took omnibusses on the Caucourt-Mingoval road for the line. We left the vehicles on the Feuchy-Feuchy Chapel road about 12 noon and remained in the vicinity until 5 p.m. when we went up to the line and relieved the 7th Bn. S. Staffordshire Regiment in the Hamblain-les-Pres sector. The Boches had dammed the Scarpe so that there was about 700 yards or 800 yards of water between us, and no bridges or crossings on our front, so that we were unable to get close touch with them. (Map 51B.)

We went into the line fourteen Officers and 650 other ranks, the 1st Bn. Hampshire Regiment being on our right and the 6th Bn. West Yorkshire on our left. It was exceptionally quiet during the tour, the only

activity being the shelling of Jigsaw wood and Victoria copse, on two occasions for two hours with "Yellow Cross" gas. This necessitated the right Company headquarters and its reserve platoons evacuating their position, as the gas was blown across by a favourable wind, causing ten casualties. We were relieved on the 24th by the Lancashire Fusiliers and moved back to the Orange hill area, the Brigade becoming reserve Brigade.

On the 27th orders were received for the Battalion to be ready to move at short notice in view of a possible withdrawal by the enemy, but on the next day fresh orders were received to be ready to move at half an hour's notice to the Palluel area. However, neither move took place.

During September, Colonel Liddell and Letts joined the Battalion, also Leghorn, Lovell, Swaine, Boyland, Kerswell, Tidball, Wilson, Knowles, Luker, Watson, King and Baldwin. Routh rejoined from hospital. 416 other ranks reinforcements joined us whilst at Fréville.

October.—On the night of the 30th-1st we relieved the 2nd Bn. Seaforth in the Lécuse sector. The Battalion took in seventeen Officers and 630 other ranks. All three Battalions of the Brigade were in the line, the 1st Bn. Hampshire Regiment on our left and the 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. on our right.

The 7th Canadian Infantry Bn. relieved the Battalion on the night of 6-7 October and companies marched back independently to the Orange hill area. During the tour we had ten other ranks casualties, one killed, two wounded, and seven gassed.

The following morning the Battalion marched through Arras to Berneville, about sixteen miles, halting

for dinners near Dainville. We arrived about 4.30 p.m. and were billeted in No. 2 Camp, which we had previously occupied in March this year. (**Map 51C.**)

The first day at Berneville was spent in cleaning up and reorganizing platoons into four sections again. During the afternoon the Brigade Commander presented decorations to Officers and men of the Brigade, and later, the Divisional Commander lectured to all Officers of the Brigade.

The morning of the 10th was spent in carrying out an attack scheme in co-operation with artillery and trench mortars.

On the 11th we joined the remainder of the Brigade and took omnibusses on the Arras-Doullens road about 11.30 a.m. We got out about 4 p.m. just south of Bourlon wood (about twenty-four miles) and marched to a billeting area east of Fontaine-Notre-Dame, and four miles west of Cambrai. (**Map 57C.**) There was scarcely any accommodation, so that most of the men had to sleep in the open. The following day was spent in making shelters and generally improving accommodation and the next morning, 13 October, we marched from the Fontaine-Notre-Dame area to Escaudoevres, four miles N.E. of Cambrai.

On 17 October we relieved the 4th Bn. York and Lancaster Regiment in support, near the village of Avesnes-le-Sec. We took in twenty Officers, excluding the Medical Officer, and 650 other ranks. The enemy shelled fairly heavily all round, but did not concentrate on any particular spot. (**Map 51A.**)

The following day was spent improving our positions; this was possible owing to a thick mist which lasted throughout the day. During the night enemy shelling was very heavy and scattered.

The 19th was quiet throughout.

On the 20th after several changes of plan, the Battalion followed the 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. and 1st Bn. Hampshire Regiment through the village of Haspres (three miles), "A" and "C" Companies passing through "B" and "I" just before entering the village, and establishing a line in front of the railway embankment east of the village. "B" and "I" Companies went into billets in the cellars of Haspres that evening.

The Battalion rested during the day of the 21st, but in the evening relieved the 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. in the front line. Immediately after the relief we pushed out patrols, which met with considerable resistance from snipers and machine-guns. The enemy artillery was fairly active, giving special attention to the roads in the vicinity. On the morning of the 22nd our patrols succeeded in capturing a German machine-gun post, consisting of one machine-gun, one automatic rifle, and nine men. This capture afforded a very valuable identification, which eventually resulted in the clearing of the wood near the Ferme de Bouveneule, thus slightly advancing the right of our line. The following day patrolling activity was continued and two reconnaissances of the river Ecaillon two miles east of Haspres, made. Enemy machine-gunners and snipers prevented our line being further advanced.

On 24 October the Battalion took part in the attack on the ridge east of the river Ecaillon. "B" and "I" Companies provided bridging parties for the 1st Bn. Somerset L.I. and 1st Bn. Hampshire, while "A" and "C" Companies provided parties for "mopping up" and consolidating the "Yellow" line when captured. The remainder of "B" Company withdrew to an area



slightly in rear of the front line when the attacking troops were in position. At zero plus two hours they moved forward and consolidated the "Blue" line. The parties from "A" and "C" Companies rejoined the Battalion in the "Blue" line on being relieved by two companies of the Hampshire. Enemy shelling was not heavy and casualties comparatively few.

On the night of the 24-25th companies were relieved and marched back to billets in Haspres.

#### CASUALTIES DURING THE OPERATIONS.

Officers Killed : *nil*.

Wounded :

20 October	Captain T. Carlyle	...	(at duty)
	2nd Lieut. J. K. Metherell	...	
	2nd Lieut. G. A. Luker	...	(at duty)
21 October	2nd Lieut. F. R. M. Lee	...	(at duty)
	Lieut. J. S. Tidball		
24 October	2nd Lieut. G. A. Luker		

Other Ranks :

20 to 25 October	Killed	...	20
	Wounded	...	100
	Missing...	...	2
			<hr/> 122

From the 25th to the 28th the Battalion remained in Haspres. It left that place on the afternoon of the 28th and relieved the 2nd Bn. Lancashire Fusiliers as right Battalion to the Division preparatory to attacking enemy positions east of the river Rhonelle and especially the village of Préseau, five miles N.E. of the Ecaillon early on the morning of the 30th. The Battalion front included a large bridge-head just east of the village of Artres. "C," "A" and "I" Companies formed the front line with "B" in support. On our right was the 1st Bn. East Lancashire Regiment and on our left the 1st Bn. Hampshire Regiment. Enemy

artillery was very active during the night, especially on Artres.

The following evening a strong patrol of "C" Company made good some shallow trenches, thus considerably enlarging the bridge-head. As soon as posts had been established in this trench one platoon of "A" Company took them over and was temporarily attached to "C" Company. The 1st Bn. Hampshire Regiment conformed by pushing forward posts. They also sent one company to relieve "I" Company which moved back into support on the left of "B" Company, and Battalion Headquarters moved into the Château at Artres. The enemy artillery continued to be active, but machine-gun fire was normal. Operations were postponed twenty-four hours.

On the 30th an order was received postponing operations a further twenty-four hours. The enemy artillery fire had slackened somewhat but sniping and machine-gun fire was active throughout the day. The 31st was uneventful, the enemy's attitude remaining much the same. During the assembly heavy rain fell, which in addition to three days of fairly heavy shell-fire and general discomfort, proved a great strain on the troops.

During October Salter rejoined us from hospital, and Adams, Younghusband, Finch, Chamberlain, Farmer, Metherell, Mitchell, Tarlton and Somerville joined us from the Base. Ninety-three other ranks reinforcements also joined the Battalion.

At dusk on 31 October four foot-bridges were placed across the river Rhonelle by Tarlton, ready for the right company 1st Hampshire Regiment to cross. This operation was well carried out without incident.

November.—At 01:00 hours on 1 November Companies began to move into the assembly position, the front line of which had been previously taped out. Companies crossed by the bridge near the mill at the times laid down in Battalion orders and formed up, two Companies in front, two in support and “B” company Somerset L.I. behind the right support Company. Companies were a little crowded and the left Companies could not take up their full frontage, but the result was that the whole of the enemy barrage was avoided.

At 05:15 our barrage opened, the main part of it bursting very well about 300 yards in front. A few guns were shooting short, however, and caused some forty casualties before the Battalion moved at zero plus fifteen minutes. These few guns shot consistently short throughout the operations, causing some casualties even in the support line Companies.

At zero plus fifteen minutes the leading Companies moved, extending out to their left to get touch with the platoon of the left leading Company which had formed up and started from the west side of the river in close touch with the Hampshire Regiment. It was misty, and the smoke from the barrage added to the difficulty of keeping direction. The opposition encountered was patchy, some enemy posts making no resistance and a few fighting well. The advance continued satisfactorily until the second halt on a line just west of Préseau when the leading Companies were well up with the barrage and in good touch with the 61st Division on the right. Touch with the Hampshire Regiment on the left was not quite so satisfactory, but existed up to this time.

The advance was continued from this point punc-

tually, and the leading Companies penetrated through the village meeting with little opposition. They reached their final objective on the "Blue" line, but could obtain no touch on either flank on arrival there. The left support Company proceeded to "mop up" the village—a large undertaking for one Company—while "B" company Somerset L.I., now reduced to about eighty other ranks, began to consolidate a support line west of Préseau.

Before the consolidation of the front line was complete, and before the out-post Company had got out in front, a strong counter-attack developed from the north-east and south-east. The enemy, making use of the gaps in the line on either flank of the Battalion, entered the village from the north and could be seen crossing the high ground both north and south of the village, so that the three leading Companies were completely cut off. Enemy artillery fire was not great, but the machine-gun fire was very heavy. At this time the "mopping up" Company had barely completed their task, and withdrew, according to orders, to consolidate a support position west of the village in conjunction with "B" company Somerset L.I. It is probable that "B" Company of the Battalion, having lost all its officers early in the attack, lost direction and very few of them were seen on the final objective and very few ever returned to the support position. The other two Companies, now very weak and trying to hold a front of about 1,400 yards, finding the enemy all round them, turned and fought their way back to the support position through the village, where the remains of them were reorganized and helped "B" company Somerset L.I., and "A" Company of the Battalion to hold the line and stem the counter-attack.

At the commencement of the counter-attack the S.O.S. signal was sent up six times, but got no response for about half an hour, after this the barrage came down on its old line east of the village. It was eventually brought back to a line on the western outskirts of the village to help to cover the reorganization, and intermittently, during the rest of the day. On this line west of the village touch was obtained with the Hampshire Regiment at the Old Mill and the line was held. Troops on our right were some way further back and touch was not established till later in the day.

A number of casualties were inflicted on the Battalion by low-flying enemy aircraft, about fifteen of which were present. They were especially active during the counter-attack.

The Battalion captured nine trench mortars and a battery of field guns, though the latter and three of the former were lost in the counter-attack. It is impossible to estimate the number of prisoners and machine-guns captured. About 100 prisoners were lost in the counter-attack. The Battalion was relieved by the Seaforth Highlanders after dark.

On 2 November by zero plus one and a half hours the Battalion had moved by Companies and taken up a supporting position behind the King's Own Regiment. They were shelled intermittently in this position, but suffered few casualties. The Battalion was finally relieved by a company of the 9th Bn. Sherwood Foresters after dark on 2 November, and returned to billets in Haspres. After the heavy fighting of the previous day and the three days holding the line before the battle, the troops were thoroughly exhausted.

## CASUALTIES ON 1 NOVEMBER.

Officers Killed: *nil*.

Wounded :

Captain T. Carlyle

Lieut. H. L. Routh

2nd Lieut. C. Knowles

2nd Lieut. J. H. Davies

2nd Lieut. A. E. Boxland

Rev. A. J. Billings

Other Ranks :

Killed	...	...	51
Wounded	...	...	200
Missing	...	...	13
			<hr/> 264

The next days, till the 11th, were devoted to resting, cleaning up and reorganizing, with drill and physical training parades and musketry, and various inspections. Inter-Battalion competitions also took place in signalling and revolver shooting.

On the morning of the 11th, at 9 o'clock, we started for Saultain by march route. On the way small flank and advanced guard schemes were carried out. On arrival at Saultain (10 miles) we found no billets available so continued along the Valenciennes-Jenlain\* road to Curgies, where we found very comfortable billets. The Armistice now having been signed all our attention was turned to smartening up parades. Lewis-gun and scouting classes still continued. (Map 51A.)

On the 13th the compulsory Educational Training

---

\* It is interesting to note that from Préseau where the 1st Battalion was so heavily engaged on 1 November 1918 to the position at Briastre near Solesmes where the same Battalion on 25 August 1914 fired its first shots in the Great War is only about eleven miles! Artres lies about six miles S.S.E. of the old fortress of Valenciennes, whilst Solesmes is about six miles north of Le Cateau. (See Maps 51A and 57B.)

Scheme came into force. From now onwards two and a half hours each morning was devoted to military training, one hour to educational training, and the afternoons were spent in games and inter-company football and cross-country competitions.

Our Transport gained high praise for its very fine appearance at an inspection of the whole of the Divisional Transport. Bland, who succeeded Glover as Transport Officer, when the latter was killed, deserves great credit for the improvement in the Transport after all its heavy work in the past few months.

Various lectures and ceremonial parades helped to fill up the time.

On 20 November Major Fellowes, who had commanded the Battalion for two years from August 1916, returned to us as 2nd-in-Command. He had been away ten weeks, and had made a rapid recovery from the wound he got on 2 September in the Drocourt-Quéant line, when he was shot through the body by a machine-gun bullet, and had a wonderful escape.

On the 24th Rifleman Sheard was awarded a bar to his Military Medal, and Military Medals were awarded to Sergeant Spiers, Rifleman Horner, Rifleman Hastings, Rifleman Evans, Sergeant Mainey, Rifleman Playle, Acting-Corporal McGlyn, Corporal Morris and Company-Sergeant-Major Goode, in connection with the operations on 24 October and 1 and 2 November.

On the 26th General Horne Commanding 1st Army, inspected the Division, and in spite of a day of bitter cold and rain it was a very fine show, and quite like a pre-war Review.

During November the following Officers joined the Battalion, Major R. T. Fellowes, Lieutenants F.

Billington and F. J. Brooker, 2nd Lieutenants G. W. Boyd Moss, R. Stark, H. C. Hamilton, O. K. Ferguson, K. P. Tidlesley, L. W. Magrath, T. Howard, and 126 other ranks, reinforcements.

In the middle of December Military Crosses were awarded to Captain J. A. Taylor, Captain C. G. Naumann, and 2nd Lieutenant A. E. Salter; D.C.M.'s to Corporal Molineaux, Riflemen Ridgewell and Bryant, and a M.M. to Corporal Cobb. Demobilization began about the same time, thirteen coal-miners being the first men of the Battalion to go. These were shortly followed by various long service men.

Christmas Day was celebrated in proper fashion and everyone managed to enjoy themselves in spite of rather poor accommodation. Great ingenuity was displayed in the decorations, and the thanks of all ranks are due to Sergeant Baxter, who did all the shopping in Paris for us. The Officers played the Sergeants at football in the afternoon. This was not taken seriously, considering that each side was selected by its opponents, and that the official rules were not very strictly observed! Riflemen Gammell, Rowe and Harrington undertook the duties of referee and linesmen, and took a somewhat active part in the game in spite of their fancy dress!

A small Battalion Boxing Show took place towards the end of the month to choose Battalion representatives for the Divisional competition. We are out of the Football competitions, having been defeated by the 1st Bn. West Yorks (Pioneers) at Association and by the 2nd Bn. Lancashire Fusiliers at Rugby. We are now training hard for the Cross-country and Tug-of-War competitions. In the Brigade competitions we won the Musketry by over 100 points and a "Runners"



race, and were second in the Lewis-gun and Cooking competitions.

During December the following Officers joined the Battalion, E. G. Hine, M. B. Tennent and J. A. Bennett ; also 306 other ranks, reinforcements, including Company-Sergeant-Major Selway, M.C., whom we were all delighted to see back again.

In the Commander-in-Chief's Despatches the following were mentioned : Captain J. A. Davison, Company-Sergeant-Major F. McGahey, Sergeant A. Harding and Corporal F. Amey.

Thus ends a memorable year—a year that has been full of incident, of much hard fighting, and of much interest.

During the year 115 Officers have served in the Battalion, and the following Honours and Rewards have been won by the Battalion: 1 Victoria Cross; 7 Military Crosses; 1 Bar to Military Cross; 6 Distinguished Conduct Medals; 2 Meritorious Service Medals; 45 Military Medals; 5 Bars to Military Medal; 8 Mentions in Despatches; 1 Brevet-Promotion; 1 Foreign Decoration.

LIST OF OFFICERS ON STRENGTH OF BATTALION,  
31 DECEMBER, 1918.

	Type of Com- mission	Employment
Lieut.-Col. G. W. Liddell, D.S.O. ...	R.	Com. Officer
Major R. T. Fellowes, D.S.O., M.C.	R.	2nd-in-Comd.
Captain W. H. P. Swaine ...	R.	O.C. "I" Coy.
" F. H. Farmer ...	S. R.	O.C. "B" Coy.
" J. A. Taylor, M.C. ...	R.	O.C. "A" Coy.
" G. Bland ...	S. R.	Trans. Officer
" N. R. Harvey ...	R.	O.C. "C" Coy.
" C. C. Naumann, M.C. ...	S. R.	Adjutant
Lieut. W. H. Shoobert ...	T.	
" N. C. Denton ...	S. R.	Bde. Claims Officer
" F. Younghusband ...	T.	
" F. Billington ...	S. R.	
" A. E. Adams ...	S. R.	
" F. J. Brooker, M.M. ...	R.	
" A. Waudby, D.C.M. ...	R.	Sig. Officer
" G. T. Kerswell ...	T.	
" W. E. G. Leghorn, M.C. ...	T.	
" A. O. Hunting... ...	T.	
2nd Lieut. E. G. Hine ...	S. R.	
" C. B. Craven ...	S. R.	Intel. Officer
" K. P. Tildesley ...	T.	
" P. C. Somerville ...	T.	
" F. R. N. Lee ...	S. R.	Educat. Officer
" R. C. Lovell ...	R.	
" A. E. Salter, M.C. ...	R.	
" H. V. Morlock, M.C. ...	T.	
" A. R. Burridge ...	S. R.	
" C. W. Boyd Moss ...	T.	
" W. J. Woodside, M.M. ...	T.	
" E. J. Podbury ...	T.	
" H. K. Short ...	R.	
" L. Watson ...	T.	
" C. Baldwin, M.M. ...	T.	
" G. D. Chamberlain ...	S. R.	
" M. B. Tennent ...	S. R.	
" R. G. Tarlton ...	T.	
" G. A. Mitchell ...	S. R.	

LIST OF OFFICERS ON STRENGTH OF BATTALION,  
31 DECEMBER, 1918—*continued*.

	Type of Com- mission	Employment
2nd Lieut. L. W. Magrath ... ..	T.	
" H. Finch ... ..	S. R.	
" H. C. Hamilton ... ..	T.	
" O. K. Ferguson ... ..	S. R.	
" R. Stark ... ..	T.	
" T. Howard ... ..	T.	
" J. A. Bennett ... ..	T.	
Hon. Lieut. and T/Qmr. C. Morgan	T.	Quartermaster
1st Lieut. J. W. Aldridge, M.C. ...	U. S. A. M.O.R.C.	Med. Officer

DISTRIBUTION OF BATTALION, 31 DECEMBER, 1918.

	Officers	Other ranks
With the Battalion ... ..	41	861
Temporarily detached ... ..	5	53
Total strength ... ..	46	914

## WAR-RECORD OF 2ND BATTALION. 1916.

On 1 January 1916 the Battalion had been resting for some six weeks in billets near Aire. A programme of training had been carried out, culminating in Brigade and Divisional manoeuvres. On the 3rd it was selected by the Army Commander to carry out an experimental demonstration to ascertain the value of smoke bombs and flares in co-operation with contact-aeroplanes. (**Map 36A.**)

On the 9th and 10th the Battalion marched via Estaires to billets in Fleurbaix. Between 10 January and 27 March eight tours of duty in the line were completed, each of four days' duration. Beyond the usual sniping and patrol activity, no event of importance occurred. The remainder of the time was spent in Brigade and Divisional reserve. (**Map 36.**)

28 March.—Battalion proceeded by train from Lestrem to Longeau near Amiens, and marched thence to billets in Flesselles where it remained until 5 April.

On the 5th and 6th the Battalion marched a distance of about thirty miles to bivouacs in Hénencourt wood and on the 9th moved up to billets in Dernancourt with two Companies in close support in Becourt wood. (**Maps 62<sup>D</sup> and 57<sup>D</sup>.**)

On the night of the 11th these two Companies were called upon to reinforce the 1st Bn. Royal Irish Rifles, who, after an intense bombardment which embraced

the vicinity of the wood, had been raided by the enemy, and had suffered severe casualties. Our casualties were one killed and eight wounded.

From 9 April to 1 July the Battalion was in the line six times in the Thiepval-la-Boisselle sector, the tours of duty varying from two to eight days. The trenches occupied were comparatively dry, but far inferior to the breast-works of Fleurbaix.

In preparation for the coming offensive, artillery and trench mortars were exceedingly active, and our casualties were comparatively heavy. Many successful reconnaissances were carried out; particularly by 2nd Lieutenant H. Daniels and 2nd Lieutenant Murray, up to and through the German wire.

Whilst out of the line special attention was directed to practice the assault, and to exercises in open warfare. A battle platoon composed of specially selected volunteers from "A" and "D" Companies was formed and trained.

At midnight on the 25-26 June a very successful raid was carried out on the enemy's trenches opposite Aveluy. The raiding party consisted of 2nd Lieutenant S. W. Murray, 2nd Lieutenant G. H. Anderson and fifty men. At 11.20 p.m. 2nd Lieutenant Anderson laid out tapes from three points in our wire to a position 100 yards from the enemy wire, where he laid another tape across, on which the raiding party were to line up. From the centre of this position another tape was laid up to the enemy's wire. At 11.55 p.m. the whole party, led by 2nd Lieutenant Murray, filed out through our own wire and lay down along the line marked out by the cross-tape. They carried with them three Bangalow torpedoes, each of which was 30 feet long, and in three sections.

At 12 midnight our artillery opened on the German positions, the 18-pounders and 4.5 inch howitzers firing on the enemy front line and the heavier howitzers on the approaches, etc.

The parties in charge joined up the sections of the Bangalow torpedoes, and at 12.16 a.m., as the artillery gradually lifted, the whole party moved forward fifty yards. The Bangalow torpedo parties moved on up to the wire, laid their torpedoes and fired them. The right and centre torpedoes exploded and cut clean lanes through the German wire ; the left torpedo failed to go off.

The raiding party now rushed in through the gaps ; the left party, having no gap, filed through the centre gap, and proceeded along the German parapet, bombing the trench until they reached their proper point of entry. Both the outside parties worked towards the centre party, using revolvers, daggers, and clubs, and bombing the dug-outs.

All parties were most successful in the hand-to-hand fighting in the trench ; killing all the men in the trench or driving them into the dug-outs or over the parados. The dug-outs were bombed, and investigation by torch-light showed them to be crowded with dead and wounded. The enemy put up a stout resistance and threw many bombs from behind the parados. At 12.40 a.m., as previously arranged, the raiding party withdrew from the enemy trench, bringing with them one prisoner of the 180th Württembergers. The raiding party brought in with them *all* their casualties, which amounted to one killed and ten wounded. At 12.45 a.m. the artillery came back into the enemy's front line, and at 12.55 a.m. they ceased fire. The raid was carried out with great dash, and proved wholly suc-

cessful. The enemy's casualties were estimated to be at least fifty.

26 June.—The Battalion was relieved in the evening and moved back to bivouacs in the Long Valley near Albert, where they had two days' rest. The Battalion moved up into the line again on the evening of the 29th, and on the evening of the 30th it took over the final assembly positions.

1 July.—At 6.45 a.m. our artillery opened a very intense bombardment on the German trenches at Owillers la-Boisselle which lasted until 7.30 a.m. At this hour our troops attacked with the 2nd Bn. Berkshire and 2nd Bn. Lincoln in front, and the 1st Bn. Royal Irish Rifles in support.

The Battalion, which was in reserve, left its assembly trenches at 7.30 a.m. and proceeded up the communication trenches to the front line. The attacking troops and their supports were held up right at the beginning of the attack by very heavy rifle, machine-gun, and shrapnel fire. They only succeeded in reaching the enemy's trenches at a few points, from which they were very soon driven back.

The Battalion which was crowded into the front trenches came under very intense shell fire from guns of all calibres. As it was decided to attempt no further infantry attack, "A," "B," and "C" Companies were withdrawn to the support line, whilst "D" Company, with details of the rest of the Brigade, held the front line. The details of the other Battalions were withdrawn just before dark and relieved by "A" Company.

The casualties of the Battalion in this attack were practically all due to shell fire.

Captains A. H. Curtis and W. G. K. Boswell with 2nd Lieutenants H. Daniels, V.C., Etheridge and

Sayer were wounded ; 128 other ranks were killed and wounded. Shortly after midnight the Battalion was relieved by troops of the 37th Brigade, and marched back to bivouac in the Long Valley.

At midnight 2-3 July the Battalion entrained at Dernancourt, detraining at Ailly-sur-Somme on the 3rd and marching to very good billets in St. Sauveur. Here it remained only one night, marching on the following day to Fourdrinoy where it stayed two days in billets. (Map 62<sup>D</sup>.)

6 July.—In the morning marched a distance of ten miles to Longueau where entrained for the Bethune area, and at 6.30 p.m. detrained at Pernes, and marched to very good billets in Marles-les-Mines. From 6 to 22 July the Battalion was resting in billets behind the line. Parades were carried out under Company arrangements, and several working parties were called for to work behind the line.

10 July.—The G.O.C. Division inspected the Battalion and presented medals for the raid of 25 June. On 11th, the Brigade was inspected by the G.O.C. 1st Army.

The Battalion went into the line in the Hohenzollern sector on 22 July. From this date until 10 October it remained in this sector, doing in all thirty-eight days in the front line ; the tours varying from four to ten days. Fifteen days from 7 to 22 August were spent in rest billets at Fouquieres ; the remainder of the time being spent in Brigade support or reserve.

29 July.—The enemy raided a portion of the Battalion front, under cover of a heavy box barrage, capturing six of our men. Eight more were missing.

During this period the usual routine of trench



warfare was carried out. Trench mortars and artillery were very active on both sides, consequently our casualties were fairly heavy. On 22 August Captain and Adjutant J. V. O. Byrne-Johnson was killed whilst going round the front line. Whilst in Brigade support and reserve, large working parties were found by the Battalion almost every day; parades were carried out under Company arrangements.

A big raid was attempted by the Battalion opposite Hulluch on the night of 25-26 August. (Map 36C.)

Wire was cut throughout the 25th by 18 pounders and light trench mortars and it appeared that several gaps had been made.

At 12 midnight three Companies of the Battalion went forward under cover of a heavy barrage, reaching the German wire at 12.5 a.m., where it came under an intense enemy barrage, largely from trench mortars and rifle-grenades from his second and third lines directed at his own front line and wire. We failed to come in contact at any point with the enemy, who was not occupying his front line.

It appears that the enemy, after the wire cutting, evacuated this portion of his front line, and arranged for a heavy barrage of artillery, machine-guns, and rifle-grenades on his own front line and wire, commencing it practically at the same hour as our own bombardment started. A certain number of shells fell into our front and support lines. Our casualties were as follows :—

Killed.—2nd Lieutenant Wilson.

Missing.—Lieutenant R. H. Whateley (went to 2nd line), 2nd Lieutenant M. Frisch (remained at duty), 2nd Lieutenant R. E. C. Oliver.

Wounded.—Lieutenant Heaton Ellis, and 2nd

Lieutenants W. A. Fraser, J. E. W. Lomas, N. D. Evans, S. W. P. Steen, S. W. Murray, D.S.O., and R. Leetham.

Fifteen other ranks were killed, eighty-seven wounded, and nineteen were missing, making a total casualty list of eleven Officers and 121 other ranks.

15 October.—Early on this day after five days' rest at Allouagne, the Battalion which had been reinforced during the past three months by several large drafts, entrained at Lillers for the Somme area, detraining at Pont Remy near Amiens at 11 a.m. the same day.

They were conveyed on the 15th by French motor omnibuses through Amiens to Ville, whence they marched six miles to a camp behind the line, known as the Citadel. (Map 57C.)

19 October.—The Battalion moved up into the line marching via Trones wood where they bivouacked from noon until 4 p.m.; relieving the 7th Bn. Buffs in the evening near Lesboeufts. Rain fell practically continuously the entire day.

23 October.—At 2.30 p.m. the Battalions attacked under a creeping barrage with "A" and "B" Companies in front. The leading waves advanced in good order for about 350 yards, where they were held up by heavy machine-gun fire from an enemy strong point on their right flank.

Our right platoon was unable to take this strong point, neither did we succeed in taking it throughout the day as the Battalion on our right (the 2nd Bn. Lincolnshire Regiment) was also unable to make any progress.

"C" and "D" Companies were able eventually to come up to the line reached by "A" and "B" Companies and assisted them in digging in. Detachments of

"C" Company succeeded in pushing forward a further 200-300 yards but had to withdraw at dusk, as the enemy were very strong on our right flank.

During the night we took twenty-four prisoners of the 73rd Prussian Infantry Regiment, some of whom were deserters and others were ration parties who had lost their way.

Most of our casualties were caused by machine-gun fire from our right flank.

The following Officers were killed: Captain H. W. Simpson, Lieutenant H. L. Pollack, and 2nd Lieutenants J. R. Greathead and L. V. Godwin.

Captain S. W. Murray, D.S.O., with 2nd Lieutenants S. Knowles, T. H. Graham and A. T. Brown were wounded.

Among other ranks, 230 were killed, wounded or missing.

The Battalion was relieved at 11 p.m. on the 24th by the 2nd Bn. Sherwood Foresters, spending the night in bivouacs in the open, and moving to camp in Trones wood on the morning of the 25th.

Lieutenant H. F. Buxton was wounded just before the relief; the only Officers remaining unwounded being Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. R. Brand, and 2nd Lieutenants Cremer, Martinant, Moore and Leetham.

The Battalion was again in the line in this sector from 28-30 October and 9-14 November, resting from 30 October to 9 November at the Citadel camp. They were inspected on 2 November by Field Marshal H.R.H. The Duke of Connaught, Colonel-in-Chief of the Regiment.

The shell fire continued to be very heavy in this sector, causing us to suffer rather heavy casualties; the weather was very bad, and the condition of the

cross-country tracks and roads indescribable, the former being knee-deep in mud.

19 November.—The Battalion entrained at Edge Hill near Dernancourt for Airaines where it detrained and marched to billets in Warlus. It remained at rest in Warlus until 28 December, Company parades only being carried out during the period, except for a Brigade Inspection on 26 December.

25 December.—Christmas Day celebrations were carried out.

The Battalion returned to Edge Hill by train from Airaines on 28 December, sending up 500 men on the 30th into support at Fregicourt.

The following table gives the casualties suffered by the Battalion during the year, and shows how our casualties were four times as heavy in the last six months:—

Officers	killed	1st Jan.—30 June...	8.	1 July—31 Dec....	9
„	wounded	„	... 4.	„	... 16
„	missing	„	... <i>nil.</i>	„	... 5
Other ranks	killed	„	... 25.	„	... 110
„	wounded	„	... 79.	„	... 518
„	missing	„	... —	„	... 120

Making a total of casualties during the year 1916 of 37 Officers and 852 other ranks.

## WAR-RECORD OF 2ND BATTALION. 1917.

On 1 January 1917 the 2nd Battalion was in support near Maurepas, where it had been for three days, but was relieved on the 3rd, and on 9 January it moved by train to Warlus, entraining at Bray-Toubiers and detraining at Airaines. (**Map 57C.**)

Between the 10th and 23rd the Battalion was reorganized on the new system, which consisted of having one Lewis-gun section, one bombing section, and two rifle sections per platoon; one of the rifle sections being trained as rifle-grenadiers. During this period the new organization was practised, a demonstration being given on 21 January by the battle-platoons of the 25th Brigade, before the Divisional Commander, Major-General W. C. G. Heneker, D.S.O., and Officers of the Divisional School.

Leaving Warlus on 23 January the Battalion moved to Edge Hill by train from Airaines, and on 27 January it relieved the 12th Bn. South Wales Borderers in the Rancourt sector where it remained in the line for three days, being relieved on the 30th and moving to camp at Maurepas. (**Map 62C.**)

During the month of February the Battalion did two tours of duty in the line, from the 3rd to the 7th in the Rancourt sector and from the 22nd to the 27th in the Quarry Farm sector; the remainder of the time, from 11th to the 22nd being spent in General Headquarters reserve at Maurepas.

During this period Battalion training was carried out, and the new organization practised, a demonstration being held before the IVth Army Commander on

19 February by our battle-platoons and those of the 2nd Bn. Royal Berkshire Regiment.

On 17 February after four weeks of hard frost, a heavy thaw set in which reduced the country to a quagmire.

On 4 March the 2nd Bn. Berkshire attacked in conjunction with the 24th Brigade on the left; all objectives were gained.

During this battle we were called upon for the following:—

One Company went up to support the Berkshire Regiment, one Company was employed carrying R.E. stores to the front line, and during the night of the 4th one Company was called upon to wire in front of the front line, while the remaining Company had to go up and hold a portion of the front line on the right of the captured trenches.

Our casualties were as follows: 2nd Lieutenants Pidsley, Brown, Batchelor, Ware and Hobbs were wounded. Other ranks, four killed and thirty-six wounded.

The Battalion was again in the line from the 8th to the 16th March, holding a portion of the trenches which had been captured on the 4th. Active patrolling was carried out as an enemy retirement was anticipated.

On the night of 8 March, while in charge of a digging party near Bouchavesnes, 2nd Lieutenant G. Cates was killed by putting his foot on a bomb, in order to save the men working with him. He was awarded a posthumous Victoria Cross for this act of Gallantry.

Between 18 March and the 27th we were in the line near Moislains for one night and were then

relieved, proceeding to Bouchavesnes where we were employed on road-making.

On the 24th a draft of sixty-eight other ranks arrived and on the 26th the Battalion was fitted with the small box-respirator.

From the 27th to 6 April we were again in the fighting line, during which time two small attacks were made. The outpost line taken up on the 27th was in front of Equancourt; Fins being occupied by us on the 29th. (Map 57C.)

An attack was made on the 30th in conjunction with the 20th Division on our left, the objective being Dessert wood, which was taken and our line advanced about 2,000 yards.

This attack is worthy of special mention as three Battalions of the Regiment were in line side by side; the 2nd Battalion being on the right, with the 10th Battalion and 11th Battalion in the 20th Division on its left. In this attack the Battalion lost three men killed and ten wounded.

On the night of 3-4 April we advanced our line 1,500 yards, and Battalion Headquarters were moved to Sorel le Grand.

Another attack took place on the afternoon of the 4th in order to capture the high ground which lies north of the Fins-Gouzeaucourt road, but it was not until after dark that after some severe fighting all the objectives were gained, the attackers being repeatedly held up by heavy shell and machine-gun fire.

During the day the Battalion suffered the following casualties: 2nd Lieutenants Adams and Southall wounded, ten other ranks killed, and twenty-three wounded.

On 6 April the Battalion went into rest at Lieramont, remaining at rest in this area until the 18th, during which time Battalion training was carried out and two drafts of twenty-one and nineteen other ranks joined.

On 18 April the Battalion was again in the line north-west of Gonnellieu where it again attacked early on the morning of the 21st. The objective for the Battalion was the northern sector of Gonnellieu and the trenches north-west of the village. The centre of the attack was held up by very heavy machine-gun and rifle fire from a German trench in front and was unable to make any progress, but the flank Companies were able to work round the enemy's flanks and attack him in the flanks and rear. These tactics were entirely successful, so that the enemy garrison, being practically surrounded, was obliged to surrender, forty-six prisoners and two machine-guns falling into our hands. Six more prisoners were captured in the course of street fighting in Gonnellieu. Major G. M. A. Ellis was wounded by shell fire while going forward to view progress; Captain Hon. E. Coke assumed the command.

Special credit is due to the battle-patrol platoon and flank Companies who in this action worked round the flanks of the enemy and enabled the Battalion to gain its objectives. The consolidation after the attack was carried out under heavy shell fire. During the day 2nd Lieutenant A. H. Holland and twelve other ranks were killed; Major G. M. A. Ellis, Captain S. A. Hadland, 2nd Lieutenants A. G. Throssell, and F. L. Bell and forty-five other ranks wounded.

During the following three weeks, two days were spent in the outpost line east of Villers Guislains (9th to 11th); nine days in Brigade and Divisional reserve,



and fifteen days in Corps reserve at Nurlu (14th to 29th) where Company and Musketry training were carried out and firing took place on the range.

On 27 April Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. R. Brand resumed command.

On 4 May 2nd Lieutenants J. H. Bowler and G. A. Southall were awarded the Military Cross for Gallantry and devotion to duty.

On 29 May the Battalion marched to Aizecourt-le-Haut, stopping there on the 30th and marching on to Vaux-sur-Somme on 1 June where it stayed in billets until the 3rd. On 3 June it moved to Croix Rouge, by train from Heilly to Caestre, marching to and from the entraining and detraining stations. (Map 27.)

The Battalion remained in the Caestre area until the 14th when it marched to a camp three miles south-east of Poperinghe. Battalion and Company training was carried out daily, during the whole of this time and until the 29th, from which date the Battalion found daily working parties under the Royal Engineers.

The battle-patrol platoon ceased to exist on 11 June; the men being returned to their Companies.

The Battalion continued to find working parties until 11 July losing altogether five other ranks killed, twenty-three wounded, and five missing while so employed.

On the 11th it entrained at Reninghelst for the Tournehem training area near Boulogne; detraining at Audricq and marching to billets in Bonningue.

Here training was carried out daily, preparatory for the coming offensive.

Since 21 April the Battalion had been reinforced by eleven drafts of varying strengths making in all 329 men.

On 24 July the Battalion returned to the Ypres area by train from Audricq, to Hopoutre near Poperinghe, and marched to a camp near Reninghelst. (Map 28.)

On the 29th it moved up to Lock 9 on the canal 1,000 yards south of Ypres, and after dark on the 30th to Halfway-House dug-outs 700 yards north-east of Zillebeke.

31 July.—At 3.50 a.m. the 23rd and 24th Brigades attacked the Westhoek ridge and at 5.20 a.m. the Battalion commenced to line up in artillery formation east of Halfway-House preparatory to advancing and forming up east of the Westhoek ridge. We reached a line just south of the railway 1,150 yards north-west of Westhoek at 8.40 a.m. and remained there awaiting orders.

After a reconnaissance by the Brigadier and Commanding Officers it was found that the attacking troops had only been able to advance 100 yards beyond the crest of the ridge; orders were therefore given that the attack would be postponed; but at 10.10 a.m. these orders were cancelled, and fresh orders were received that the attack was to take place as originally intended.

The Battalion was to be up to the barrage, which was on the line of the road running south-east from the railway 1,500 yards north of Westhoek, by 10.15; the barrage being due to leave this point at 10.18. The Battalion advanced at once but it was never possible to reach the barrage, and it was met with very heavy machine-gun and rifle fire on the forward slopes of the ridge and suffered very heavy casualties. The right Company was reported to have established a post just west of the Hannebeek wood, but this was never verified, as all the officers were either killed or wounded.

At 1 p.m. the Battalion were holding a defensive line 700 yards in length and approximately 100 yards west of the original barrage line at 10.15 a.m. The 6/7 Bn. Royal Scots Fusiliers had gone forward north of the Ypres-Roulers railway and was out of touch with the left of the Battalion, but later a Battalion of the Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders got touch with us to the north of the railway.

At 3 p.m. the situation was as above and very few officers were left and not many N.C.O.'s. "A" Company had one officer left, 2nd Lieutenant V. C. Knollys; "B" Company, 2nd Lieutenants G. C. Chatfield and Moore, the former being wounded; "C" Company, no officers, and "D" Company, only 2nd Lieutenant Burman.

Orders to consolidate were then received and carried out; two Vickers guns and two Stokes mortars being brought up and put into position behind our left and centre Companies. At about 4.50 p.m. the enemy were seen to be advancing in large numbers and massing in the Hannebeek valley; machine-gun, Lewis gun and rifle fire were brought to bear on them and they suffered severely.

From 5 p.m. till dark the enemy kept pushing forward, making good use of ground and reached a line within 200 yards of our posts. He was brought under our Artillery and Lewis-gun fire and was unable to advance further.

At the request of the Commanding Officer a company of the 2nd Bn. Middlesex was brought up to reinforce our right and a detachment of the Royal Berkshire came up in support, as a determined counter-attack was expected after dark. The enemy kept all our posts under very heavy rifle and machine-gun fire, and any

movement of runners, etc., was attended by great danger. He also kept up a continuous artillery fire, not only on the advance posts but also in rear of them, about the support and reserve lines. The enemy made no attack after dark, evidently contenting himself with the organization of his positions. About 11 p.m. the Battalion was relieved by the 2nd Bn. Devonshire Regiment and was withdrawn west of the Bellewarde ridge.

The casualties suffered by the Battalion during this day were as follows:—

Officers killed.—2nd Lieutenants Hon. A. E. Keppel, L. H. Hillman, W. C. Field and G. H. Jackson.

Officers wounded.—Captains H. R. Price, W. A. Martin and I. C. McLean, M.C., R.A.M.C.; 2nd Lieutenants L. W. J. Pinnock, W. Brown, G. C. Chatfield, V. C. Knollys (gassed), C. L. Anderson, J. H. Bowler, M.C.; and J. M. L. Renton.

Officers wounded who remained at duty: Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. R. Brand and Captain J. J. B. Cole.

Other ranks: Killed twenty-four, wounded 195, missing seventy-one.

The next five days following the battle the Battalion spent in reorganizing and cleaning up; a few parades were carried out under Company arrangements. On 5 August it moved by motor omnibus to billets in Steenvoorde where it remained until the 10th, Battalion training being carried out each day. On this day it returned by omnibus to a camp near Ypres and on the 12th marched up to tunnels in the ramparts east of the town at the Esplanade and the Lille gate. The Battalion was reinforced by a draft of twenty-eight other ranks on the 3rd and another of fifty-one on the 7th.

In the evening of 13 August the Battalion moved up and took over a section of the front line on the eastern slopes of the Westhoek ridge, the support line being on the crest of the ridge and the reserve line on the Bellewarde ridge. The front line which consisted of small detached posts was held by two Companies; the support line by one Company, and the reserve line by one Company.

Lieutenant and Acting-Adjutant Mackeson was severely wounded in a heavy barrage on the evening of the 14th; he died of his wounds the following morning.

At 4.45 a.m. on the 16th the 1st Bn. Royal Irish Rifles and 2nd Bn. Royal Berkshire attacked, one Company of our Battalion being detailed to "mop-up" for the Royal Irish Rifles and two Companies as an immediate support. These last two Companies had orders to advance at "zero" plus 20 and establish themselves on a line 100 yards east of Hannebeek and await orders.

The attack started well and at "zero" plus one hour fifteen minutes it was reported that the above two Companies had reached the position stated. At 9.45 a.m. the Commanding Officer observed that the attack on our right front had failed. The enemy had heavily counter-attacked the ridge 500 yards south-east of Hannebeek wood and had taken some prisoners. The Commanding Officer therefore put every available man into our old front line. Great execution was done by the Battalion among the Germans who were advancing from shell-hole to shell-hole during the rest of the morning and early afternoon.

About 4.15 p.m. Captain A. H. Curtis arrived at Battalion Headquarters with half-a-dozen Riflemen,

he having been till then in shell-holes east of the Hannebeek wood, and only retired when out of ammunition and practically surrounded. The Company who "mopped up" for the Royal Irish Rifles had killed about twenty Germans, and sent back over forty prisoners, but suffered very heavy casualties while supporting the troops in front who had been heavily counter-attacked.

Half the Battalion was relieved about 11 p.m. by the Sherwood Foresters, moving back to support; the remainder were relieved before 9.30 a.m. on the morning of the 17th.

In the evening of this day the Battalion was relieved again and moved back on to Bellewarde ridge in reserve.

On the evening of 18 August it was finally relieved and marched back to camp near Ypres.

The shell-fire during this tour of duty was exceedingly heavy, and the following casualties were suffered by the Battalion: 2nd Lieutenants T. C. Mackeson and R. H. Robinson, died of wounds; 2nd Lieutenant H. Barker, missing; 2nd Lieutenant E. F. Ratcliff, wounded; Captains A. H. Curtis and H. H. Elliott, R.A.M.C., wounded but remained at duty.

Ten other ranks killed, seventy-two other ranks wounded, fifty other ranks missing, one died of wounds.

After one month's rest the Battalion moved into the front line in the Warneton sector. Here it remained until 16 November doing two tours of duty in the front line, each of eight days' duration during which 2nd Lieutenants C. H. Cooke, C. B. Matheson and G. Gamble were killed. One raid was carried out by the Battalion on 28 October; the raiding party advanced under cover of a barrage and reached the

German front line where they killed one of the enemy; the remainder of the garrison ran away.

While out of the line, Company training was carried out and many large working parties found for work under the Royal Engineers. A Brigade Boxing Competition was also held in which men of the Battalion won two Weights and were runners up in two more.

Between 19 August—16 November the Battalion received 337 other ranks reinforcements.

On 16 November it moved back to Ypres by train from Caestre and on the 17th took over a section of the front line north-west of Passchendaele. The Battalion only remained in the front line until the 19th, but during these two days it came under heavier shell-fire than it had ever previously experienced, and suffered the following casualties: 2nd Lieutenants A. G. Tundall and A. F. A. Woodward, killed; and 2nd Lieutenant J. E. Lund, wounded.

Other ranks: thirty-seven killed, eighty-three wounded, and twenty-two missing.

On 20 November the Battalion moved back to Brandhoek where it remained training for the attack until the 29th when it again moved forward to St. Jean.

After dark on 1 December it marched up to its assembly positions north-east of Passchendaele. Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. R. Brand was wounded; Lieutenant G. H. G. Anderson took over command of the Battalion.

2 December.—At 1.55 a.m. "A," "B" and "C" Companies advanced to the attack on a frontage of 370 yards. "D" Company remained in the original front line. The attacking waves came immediately under intense machine-gun fire and suffered heavy

casualties. They succeeded in advancing about 100 yards beyond the front line, where they dug themselves in, but were unable to reach their objectives or to capture the Redoubt known as Venison trench, in the centre of the Battalion front.

Between 9 p.m. and 12 midnight the Battalion was relieved by the 8th Battalion and marched to Hasler Camp, St. Jean. Casualties :—

Killed.—Captain E. F. A. Ratcliff, M.C.; 2nd Lieutenants W. Morrison and J. Brooker.

Wounded.—2nd Lieutenants J. B. Macgeorge, D. P. Jones, L. M. King-Harman, D. F. W. Baden-Powell, H. F. Cranswick and W. Bridgeman.

Other ranks : twenty-one killed, seventy-two wounded, twenty-one missing.

On 3 December the Battalion moved by train to billets in Acquin where it remained until the 25th. Captain C. W. H. Bailie took over command of the Battalion but handed it over to Major J. J. B. Cole on the 8th. Companies were at the disposal of their commanders for training.

Christmas Day was celebrated on 23 December. The Battalion won two Weights in the finals of the Divisional Boxing.

The Battalion returned to the forward area on the 25th; and moved up into support at Bellevue on 30 December.

---



## WAR-RECORD OF 2ND BATTALION. 1918.

The first two months of the year were spent in the normal routine of trench warfare, in the Passchendaele sector. Of actual trenches there were none—sections being dotted about in enlarged shell-holes and often being forced to change their position three or four times a day, owing to the influx of mud and water. As the Germans were similarly situated, very little hostility was shown in the front line and most of the casualties occurred during relief. Shell-fire, though less intense than in November and December, still made the duck-board tracks and plank-roads extremely unhealthy. Up to the beginning of March we were in the line five times, for four days at a time, and, in addition, seventeen days were spent on working parties. Our casualties during this period amounted to three Officers killed (2nd Lieutenants G. E. Collins, W. M. Gardiner, and S. K. Moore), one Officer wounded (Lieutenant-Colonel J. J. B. Cole, M.C.), and sixty-five other ranks killed or wounded. On 7 March we moved to Steenvoorde and thence, on the 11th, to Tilques near St. Omer, where we remained, in G.H.Q. reserve, until the opening of the German offensive. (**Maps 27 and 27A.**)

22 March.—The Battalion marched to Arques and entrained. (For Amiens and Somme.)

23 March.—The Battalion detrained at Rosières-en-Santerre, marched to Chaulnes, and was taken on in lorries to Morchain, where it opened out into artillery formation and advanced to Pargny, coming under

heavy shell-fire while crossing the high ground above the Somme. The Battalion took over the line of the river from north of Pargny bridge to south of Fontaigne les Pargny, with "A," "B" and "C" Companies in the line and "D" Company in support. Shortly before midnight a patrol of the enemy succeeded in rushing the bridge-head and penetrated between our front and support lines. They were ejected by an immediate counter-attack, eight of the enemy being killed and two taken prisoners, and two machine-guns captured. Casualties.—Killed: 2nd Lieutenant E. B. Anstie. Wounded: 2nd Lieutenants R. T. Parkin, L. S. Chamberlen, M.C., C. B. Keppie and A. J. Sluman. About sixty other ranks were killed or wounded. (Map 66<sup>D</sup>.)

24 March.—Soon after dawn the enemy started to bomb the posts on the river-bank, and succeeded in fording the river to the right and left of the line held by the Battalion and began to work round our flanks. The situation became very precarious and a withdrawal was ordered by the Brigadier. This was effected in good order but with very heavy casualties. The Battalion took up the line of the sunken road five hundred yards east of Morchain, remained there for about an hour and then withdrew about another three hundred yards to a position on the north-east outskirts of the village. Here it remained until about 4 p.m., with no other troops in sight, and the enemy massing in large numbers in the sunken road and in the hollow behind a wood about a quarter of a mile eastwards. We were finally ordered to withdraw to a line of trenches astride the Morchain-Pertain road, north of Potte, where the rest of the Division was already in position.

Casualties.—Killed: Captain S. A. Hadland, Lieutenant R. T. Dent, 2nd Lieutenants G. A. Lascelles and D. A. Gibbs.

Died of wounds : Lieutenant-Colonel H. S. C. Peyton, M.C.

Wounded : Captain C. E. Pegram, M.C. ; and 2nd Lieutenant B. R. Everett. Wounded (at duty) : 2nd Lieutenant W. H. Brann. Wounded and missing : Captain I. C. Maclean, D.S.O., M.C., R.A.M.C., 2nd Lieutenants E. F. C. Moore and T. C. Lewis.

Missing : Captain W. G. Gabain, M.C.

About three hundred other ranks killed, wounded or missing.

25 March.—At about 4 a.m. Battalion Headquarters and a party of eighty men under Captain F. D. R. Milne were despatched to Licourt to take part in an action, timed to commence at 9 a.m., in conjunction with two companies of the Berkshire, elements of the 24th Brigade, the 24th Division and the IIIrd French Corps, which had as its objective the recapture of the lost ground as far as the Somme canal. The remainder of the Battalion, under Captain E. W. Cremer, remained in trenches west of Morchain. At about 8 a.m. the enemy penetrated our line on a wide front and advanced rapidly towards Dreslincourt and Pertain. The Battalion became scattered into about five groups, each under an Officer or non-commissioned officer, which took up a number of successive positions, retiring gradually in a north-westerly direction. The Headquarter party held on to a trench on the southern outskirts of Licourt until the enemy were within one hundred yards and all other troops out of sight. They withdrew with difficulty to Pertain (which they found occupied by the enemy), thence to one mile north-west of that village (remaining there for two hours), next to the line of the Omiecourt-Marchelepôt road (holding on here for four hours) and finally to the Hyencourt-

Marchelepot railway, where the remainder of the Division had already dug themselves in.

Casualties.—Wounded : Captain F. D. R. Milne, 2nd Lieutenants H. M. Small, C. H. Sidney and A. A. Sutton. About fifty other ranks killed, wounded or missing.

26 March.—At about 2 a.m. the Battalion was ordered to march to bivouacs in the western outskirts of Lihons. At about 9 a.m. it took up a position in trenches east of the Lihons-Meharicourt road and south of the Nesle-Rosières railway. It remained there till 5.30 p.m. when, the enemy having entered Lihons, orders were received to withdraw through the line held by the 23rd and 24th Brigades to bivouacs west of Rosières. (**Map 66E.**)

27 March.—At about 10 a.m. the Battalion was ordered to counter-attack through the southern outskirts of Rosières in the direction of the Sugar Refinery. The Battalion advanced in artillery formation, coming under fairly heavy shell-fire but, on arrival at the objective, found the line still intact. It reinforced the 8th Bn. Durham L.I., and 2nd Bn. Worcestershire in the front line.

Casualties.—About twenty other ranks killed or wounded.

28 March.—At about 1 a.m., no enemy attack having developed on our front, the Battalion was withdrawn to bivouacs west of Rosières and at about 9 a.m. proceeded to a position in mobile reserve on the railway line one and a half miles west of Vrely. When the troops in front withdrew, the Battalion took up a line in the trenches three-quarters of a mile west of this point. At 3.30 p.m. orders were received to march to Moreuil and hold the bridge-head there at all costs.

On arrival at Moreuil, after a forced march of ten miles, the bridge-head was found to be held by the French. The Battalion went into billets at Morisel on the Avre river twelve miles S.E. of Amiens.

29 March.—The Battalion remained in billets until 2 p.m. when it was ordered to take up a position in the southern corner of the large wood north-east of Moreuil. Fairly heavy shelling throughout the afternoon. At about 5 p.m. the French started to retire south-west, the XXXth Corps, north-west. The Battalion carried out a rear-guard action to cover the right flank of the latter. At about 10 p.m. the Battalion dug itself in, 800 yards north of the wood and facing it, on the right of the XIXth Corps.

30 March.—At about 4 a.m. orders were received to abandon this line. The Battalion marched *via* Castel to a wood north-west of Rouvrel, where it remained bivouacked, in pouring rain, until the evening. At about 6 p.m. the Battalion marched to Castel, coming under heavy shell-fire, at 800 yards range, in the valley west of the village, and took up a position to protect the bridge-head, supporting the 23rd and 24th Brigades. Casualties.—About twenty other ranks killed and wounded.

31 March.—The Battalion remained in position east of Castel, holding the bridge-head.

1 April.—At about 10 a.m. the Battalion moved into position about 500 yards south of Thennes, in readiness for counter-attack, and remained there all day. At dusk it relieved elements of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade in the line south-east of Thennes.

2 April.—The Battalion was relieved in the line by a company of the 133rd French Infantry Regiment and marched to billets in Cottenchy. The Battalion

paraded at 2 p.m., marched to Sains-en-Amienois, and proceeded by omnibus to billets at Le Mesge. For the ten days' fighting, from 23 March to 2 April, the Battalion was awarded eleven Military Medals and twenty-seven Parchment Certificates.

On 13 April we moved up to Camon near Amiens and spent a week resting and training and were made up to strength again. On the 20th the Battalion relieved an Australian Battalion in the line just north of Villers-Bretonneaux. Four quiet days followed and much work was done in the way of joining up the short lengths of trenches dug by the Australians and in erecting wire entanglements. The Battalion was distributed as follows: "A" Company on the right (moved up, from support, on the night 21st-22nd), "C" in the centre, "B" on the left and "D" in reserve. (Map 62D.)

23 April.—Reports received that enemy would attack at dawn obtained from prisoners captured on right of our sector. No attack developed, probably owing to wet morning.

24 April.—Heavy enemy barrage came down at 3.45 a.m. This continued until about 7 a.m. when it became less intense and chiefly covered ground between the reserve line and Battalion Headquarters. The barrage included a large proportion of gas-shells.

Continual reports received from O.C. Companies that barrage was not on front line or in close support of Companies during the above hours. During the night 23rd-24th, half of "D" Company had been moved into close support on the right and half on the left by order of the G.O.C., 25th Infantry Brigade. The morning was very misty and the enemy put down a heavy smoke barrage at dawn making it impossible to see for more

than twenty yards. About 7 a.m. a runner from "A" Company reported at Battalion Headquarters that the enemy had got round the right flank of the Company and was attacking them and the support platoons of "D" Company from flank and rear, and was moving towards "C" Company. At 8 a.m. "B" Company was ordered to form a defensive flank joining with support platoons of "D" Company and the remains of "C" Company from "B" Company's right to reserve line.

Battalion Headquarters details moved forward to continue this line covering Battalion Headquarters and in touch with 2nd Bn. Berkshire on the right, north-west of Villers-Bretonneaux. 2nd Lieutenant Guerrier and elements of "A," "C" and "D" Companies joined this line during the morning.

At 9 a.m. enemy V $\acute{e}$ ry lights were seen going up on north-west outskirts of Villers-Bretonneaux and enemy machine-guns opened fire close to Battalion Headquarters. The reserve line and vicinity of new line joining with 2nd Bn. Berkshire was shelled at intervals all day. "B" Company on left was subjected to heavy trench mortar fire at intervals. The enemy advanced several times on right of this Company, but each time was driven off by rifle and machine-gun fire.

It was afterwards ascertained that the enemy, after breaking through south of the Villers-Bretonneaux—Warfusée road, had turned northward, between our front and support lines and also in rear of the latter, being unobserved owing to the dense mist and smoke barrage, "A" and "C" Companies taken unawares in the rear were overwhelmed, after a sharp fight, by superior numbers of the enemy, the whole of the two Companies with few exceptions being killed or cap-

tured. Very little was ascertained as to their exact fate, but it is known that one platoon of "D" Company fought to the last man and was completely wiped out. 2nd Lieutenant J. Doyle, dangerously wounded while commanding this platoon, was found on the night 24-25th during the counter-attack by the Australians.

The remainder of the day passed without further attack on our front with the exception of half-hearted attempts to turn the right flank of "B" Company, which were frustrated by the effective fire brought to bear on them by this Company.

25 April.—The lines held by the Battalion were not attacked on the 25th inst. Readjustments of our line were carried out early on the night of 25-26th, "B" Company front line—two platoons of "D" Company in support in positions occupied by "A" Company when the line was originally taken over—one platoon of "D" Company and an amalgamated platoon formed of remains of "A" and "C" Companies in reserve in the old reserve line.

On the night of 25-26th the Battalion moved to counter-attack position west of Villers-Bretonneaux.

26 April.—The situation on the south-east outskirts of Villers-Bretonneaux being obscure, orders were received from Division that a reconnaissance was to be made to clear this part of the village, if necessary, and make sure of the situation. These orders were brought to Battalion Headquarters by the Brigade Major, 25th Infantry Brigade, and were carried out by two platoons of "B" Company, under 2nd Lieutenant MacGee accompanied by the Brigade Major. Considerable resistance was met with outside the village. Several casualties were inflicted on the enemy, two machine-



guns' teams being put out of action by our fire. The party returned at 2 p.m.

Our total casualties at Villers-Bretonneaux were:—

Officers : Killed : Captain J. P. Kennedy.

Wounded : 2nd Lieutenants H. E. Mitchell, J. Doyle and W. Guerrier.

Prisoners : Captain R. C. S. Stevenson and 2nd Lieutenant A. E. Oddy.

Missing : 2nd Lieutenants McGubbin, W. Loftus, W. A. Seaman, J. D. Aitken, J. MacGee, R. W. Garner, W. Mackechnie and H. Young.

Other ranks : Killed : eighteen. Wounded : ninety-six. Missing : 268.

On the 28th we marched to billets at Boutillerie, near Amiens. The next fortnight consisted of a succession of moves—first to Abbeville, up again to Amiens, by train to Fère-en-Tardenois and then by route marches to the valley of the Aisne. Drafts, collected from various regiments, arrived at odd moments and we were gradually made up to strength. No opportunity was, however, afforded for training or reorganization. We were told that this could be done in the quiet sector which we took over from the French, at Berry-au-Bac, on the evening of 12 May.

The line was certainly amazingly quiet and we marched back to Guyancourt on the 16th without having suffered a single casualty. In fact the absence of any sort of activity was so marked as to be almost uncanny. On the 20th we took over the line once more and found the same conditions still prevailing. "A" and "B" Companies were in the line, "C" in support and "D" in reserve and the two latter were also responsible for protecting the right flank, where 500 yards of meadow separated our trenches from the river

Aisne, on the opposite bank of which the Germans occupied high ground overlooking the whole of the Battalion area.

We thus held a frontage of over two miles in all and the trenches were, in consequence, very weakly garrisoned. The enemy could be heard every night hard at work in and in front of his lines and we, at the same time, were busy preparing to carry out a raid with "B" Company. Up to and including the 26th we had only one casualty. That evening a prisoner captured by the Brigade on our left stated that an attack was to be carried out the following morning. At 2 a.m. on the 27th the enemy opened an intense bombardment, which included a large percentage of gas- and smoke-shells. Up till 4 a.m. he made no attack on our front, then quite suddenly he crossed the river at several different points and proceeded to drive a series of wedges into our right flank. Owing to the density of the smoke and the noise of the bombardment, he was on top of us before we had the slightest idea of his approach. Sentries looking out over the parapet were shot down, without warning, from the rear. The Battalion had lost nearly fifty per cent. in the preliminary bombardment and of the remainder only a handful survived the final assault.

Casualties.—Officers: Killed: Lieutenant J. S. Gribbon, 2nd Lieutenants A. H. Halford, D.C.M., J. L. Rapoport, R. C. Ellis, O. Bruce and A. J. Arch. Wounded: Lieutenant-Colonel H. S. C. Richardson; 2nd Lieutenants A. W. Allen, T. H. Vincent, D. L. McLean, M. Godfrey, D. Lowder, G. D. Denison, G. C. Hoare and D. D. Macrae.

Prisoners: Major A. A. Todd, Captains E. W. Cremer, G. H. G. Anderson, D.S.O., M.C., and A. N.

Warren, 2nd Lieutenants W. H. Harris, M.C., W. H. Abercrombie, J. Farrell, R. Beattie, E. P. Horgan, R. T. Caldwell and G. Purvis. Other ranks, about 680 killed, wounded or missing.

Meanwhile the details, consisting of seven Officers and about 100 other ranks were sent up from the Transport lines to hold the village of Gernicourt. These were afterwards amalgamated with other remnants of the Division to form a composite Battalion and remained in action until the 30th when, their numbers having been reduced to three Officers and sixteen other ranks, they were withdrawn from the line. Of the Battalion, as it existed at the beginning of March, practically nothing remained by the beginning of June. A nucleus, consisting mainly of the Transport, was formed at Soulieres on the 3rd and to this large drafts were added throughout the month. June and July were entirely devoted to training and reorganization. It was not until 5 August that the Battalion was again put in the line, relieving the 2nd Bn. Devon Regiment at Vimy midway between Arras and Lens. (**Map 51B.**) From that date we remained in the forward area almost continuously until 18 October. When we were not actually engaged in hastening the German retreat, the Companies were employed on road-making and working parties. The most serious casualties occurred on 23 August, when "A" Company was subjected to a concentration of 1,500 Yellow Cross gas-shells and lost three Officers and fifty-eight other ranks, and on 3 October when three Officers and forty-four other ranks were killed or wounded. The general line of advance was due east, by Arleux, Quiery, Esquerchin and Quinchy. On 17 October the Battalion was entrenched in front of Douai in close contact with the enemy, whose machine-gunners held the far side

of the canal. Early the next morning it was noticed that there was no movement in their lines. Patrols were sent forward at about 9 a.m. and these, on their return, reported that the town had been evacuated by the Germans. On the 19th the Battalion was withdrawn to billets at Anhiers.

Our total casualties during the period 5 August to 18 October were as follows:—

Killed: Lieutenant-Colonel R. H. Leyland.

Wounded: Captains B. H. Bennett and E. R. B. Drummond, 2nd Lieutenants T. H. Greig, K. J. Guerrier, E. J. Witherden, A. Henderson, S. L. Read, J. A. S. Jackson, R. H. Doyne and A. C. Russell. 151 other ranks killed or wounded.

During the last three weeks of the war the Battalion was not actively engaged. On 22 October we moved to Warlaing, where twelve days were devoted to training and inspections and to making friends with the local inhabitants, who received us with open arms. Then on to Cattelet, thence to St. Amand, and finally, on 10 November, via Hergnies, Vieux Condé and Harchies to Pommervent—a march of eighteen miles.

At 10.30 on the morning of the 11th the news was received that hostilities would cease at 11 o'clock.

## WAR-RECORD OF 3RD BATTALION. 1916.

During the opening days of 1916 the Battalion was completing a six weeks' rest at the village of Nortleulingham about five miles west-south-west of St. Omer, and it was not until 5 January, in very severe weather that we left our billets to go to the Ypres sector. (Map 28.)

On the 7th we proceeded to trenches west of Menin road and relieved the 7th Bn. Border Regiment. Unfortunately on the 8th we lost 2nd Lieutenants G. D. B. Parker and F. P. Raven and five men who were wounded by shell fire. On the 14th we were relieved by the 8th Bn. of The Buffs and moved into billets at Ouderdom where we were in Divisional reserve. Here we found many working parties, and on one of these parties, 2nd Lieutenant T. Cox was wounded whilst six men were killed and eighteen wounded.

On the 31st we took over trenches at Hooge, relieving the 7th Bn. Northampton Regiment. The Bosche heavily shelled these trenches on 5 February for two and a quarter hours, but our casualties only amounted to one Rifleman killed and two wounded. We were relieved by the Buffs on the 6th and moved to the Belgian Château, being in Brigade reserve.

On February 12 we again relieved the Buffs and on the 13th were subjected for about nine and a half hours

to a very severe shelling from guns of all calibres. Our casualties on that day were 2nd Lieutenants T. H. Henderson and E. J. Ingram wounded and twelve other ranks killed and eighty-six wounded. Communication between the front line and Battalion Headquarters was practically impossible and only one message was got through by runners; this was brought through by Riflemen Norman and Cato, who volunteered to make the attempt and who were awarded the D.C.M. for this action.

During the night of the 13th the shelling continued and the two Companies in the front line were relieved by the Companies in reserve with great difficulty, the relief not being completed till after daylight. During the whole of the morning of the 14th, the bombardment continued and at about fourteen hours it became so intense that it was obvious the Boche meant to attack; accordingly all available guns were asked to stand by. About sixteen hours the enemy blew up a mine under the 9th Bn. Royal Sussex Regiment and started to leave their trenches opposite our front. A "S.O.S" rocket was sent up at this moment and the response which the Artillery very quickly gave to this, together with the skilful handling of a Lewis-gun by Corporal Butler and Rifleman Backshawl—both of whom received the D.C.M.—undoubtedly greatly assisted in preventing the enemy from gaining a footing in our trenches. Our casualties on the 14th were seven other ranks killed and fifty-three wounded. During the night of 14-15th, the Battalion was relieved by the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers who had already given us great assistance in repairing our trenches during the night of 13-14th. In addition to the above awards, 2nd Lieutenant T. H. Henderson received the Military Cross

and the Battalion was complimented on its behaviour by the Army Corps and Divisional Commanders and was mentioned in the Birthday Despatches of 1916.

On the 15th we moved to rest billets at Poperinghe where the Battalion was personally congratulated by the G.O.C. and B.G.C. on its conduct. The weather was very wintry at this time, there being some six inches of snow on the ground and on 7 March, an impromptu snowball fight took place between us and the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers, in which practically the whole of the two Battalions took part.

On 9 March we moved up to trenches again in Sanctuary wood with two Companies in support in Maple copse.

On the 21st we were relieved by the 2nd Bn. Princess Patricia's Canadian L.I., under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel H. C. Buller who was at one time Adjutant of our Battalion. We moved again on the 23rd and proceeded by march route to Godewaersvelde. The march was enlivened by the pipers of the Canadian L.I. who preceded the Battalion and marched all the way with us to Godewaersvelde, where they gave a really first class concert on the 26th. On the 29th, we again were on the move, and proceeded to Bulford camp, near Messines, where we relieved the 7th Bn. Canadian Regiment in the trenches on the 30th.

On 5 April we were relieved by the 8th Bn. Buffs. and went into Brigade reserve, at La Grande Munque farm. On proceeding to the trenches again on the 11th we suffered a good deal from shelling, and on the 16th, Battalion Headquarters were "shelled out" and we took over Battalion Headquarters on Hill 63. On this occasion, we were lucky to escape with only three men wounded.

On the 18th we moved into Divisional reserve. On taking over trenches again on the 23rd we had two Companies in support on Hill 63. This hill was heavily shelled on the 26th when we had ten men wounded.

On 1 May a gas alarm was sounded; the Battalion "stood to" but the gas proved to be some distance away on our right. We had two men wounded during another bombardment of Hill 63 on 10 May, and on the 11th, we were once more relieved by the 8th Bn. Buffs. On the 24th Major R. Pigot returned from sick leave.

On 10 June, we were once more relieved by the 8th Bn. Buffs and went into Divisional reserve at Bulford camp.

On 23 June, we left Ploegsteert and took over new trenches in front of Kemmel on 2 July. On the 10th, a party of forty N.C.O.s and Riflemen under 2nd Lieutenants E. G. Kemp, C. J. Chamberlain and G. W. Latter raided the German trenches. About twelve Germans were killed for certain and many identifications were brought back. Our own casualties were 2nd Lieutenant G. W. W. Latter and five N.C.O.s and Riflemen killed and thirty-four N.C.O.s and Riflemen wounded. Nearly all these casualties were amongst men in the Company who were not taking part in the raid and were caused by a heavy barrage that the Germans put up on our trenches. The following immediate rewards were given: D.C.M., Sergeant F. Smith; Military Medals, Corporal S. Harrison and Rifleman W. Shirley.

On 14 July, Captain E. R. Kewley, Captain Hon. M. T. Boscawen, Captain and Quartermaster L. Eastmead and eighty N.C.O.s and Riflemen went to Paris for the Review of the Allied troops.



On 23 July, the Division left Kemmel for the Somme, spending a few days in Riencourt training in wood fighting, advancing under a barrage, and in the other methods of fighting then in vogue on the Somme. (Map 57C.)

On 1 August, we arrived in the Somme area, and came in to the XIIIth Corps commanded by Lieutenant-General W. N. Congreve, V.C., who came to see the Battalion in camp near Meaulté. On 7 August, the Division moved up into Corps reserve in the Carnoy valley. We all thought we knew something about shelling during our twelve months stay in the Ypres salient, but the day and night continual shelling by our guns in the Carnoy valley was quite apart from anything the Germans had ever done to us. On 12 August, the 17th Brigade went into the line in front of Guillemont with the Battalion in reserve in and around Bernafay wood. Here, for two days, we worked hard, digging communication trenches and reconnoitring the front line.

On 14 August, the 17th Brigade went back to the Carnoy valley and were then given orders to attack on the 18th.

Divisional orders for the attack were as follows:—

The 17th Brigade to take German Front Line, High Holborn, and "Z Z" trench on the front between Delville wood and Guillemont, 73rd Brigade to take Guillemont, 72nd Brigade to attack from Arrow Head copse against the German trenches south of Guillemont and to prolong the line south of the 73rd Brigade.

The 17th Brigade attacked with the 8th Bn. Buffs on the left, 3rd Bn. Rifle Brigade on the right, the 12th Bn. Royal Fusiliers supported the Buffs and the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers supported us. Zero time was

16.30 on the 18th. The Buffs attacking from Waterlot farm had one objective, the "Z Z" trench on their front.

The 3rd Battalion, attacking from Mike trench and New trench had as their first objective the German Front line between machine-gun house and Guillemont. After staying here for two hours to consolidate, our second objective was High Holborn and at 05.00 hours next morning, our third and final objective was "Z Z" trench in prolongation of the 8th Bn. Buffs so as to join up with the 73rd Brigade on the right.

The 73rd Brigade on our right had as their first objective the German front line and the quarry. After two hours here, their second objective was to be a line running through Guillemont in prolongation of High Holborn, and as their third and final objective at 5 a.m. next morning, the eastern edge of Guillemont.

#### THE 3RD BATTALION'S FIGHT ON THE SOMME ON 18TH.

Our guns had been heavily shelling the German trenches during the afternoon. At 16.28 "A" Company under Captain D. N. Guthrie, "B" Company under Captain Hon. M. Boscawen, "D" Company under Captain J. H. Smith (in that order from the left) left their trenches, each Company on a 100 yards front with their platoons in depth. At this same hour our guns put up an intense barrage of the German front line. By keeping close to the barrage, these three Companies had comparatively few casualties going across "No Man's Land," but there was a good bit of close fighting before they actually took the trench. In this first trench we captured two Officers and about one hundred unwounded men, killing half as many again in

the trench. During our two hours stay in this trench, many of the prisoners were made to dig before they were sent back. "C" Company reinforced at 17.30.

Meanwhile the 8th Bn. Buffs' attack had been completely successful against the "Z Z" trench but the 73rd Brigade had not reached their first objective.

At 18.30 when the Battalion was due to advance again on High Holborn, our right had to be dropped back, owing to the 73rd Brigade failure, and the whole of "D" Company formed a flank to Guillemont village. "A" and "B" Companies reached High Holborn, taking Guillemont station at the same time. It was impossible to take our bit of "Z Z" trench with our flank so much thrown back and it was not attempted.

Our casualties on this day were—Killed: five Officers and twenty other ranks. Wounded: six Officers and 187 other ranks; and seven men missing.

During the next three days we stayed where we were, expecting the order to attack again at any minute. On the 21st, a fresh attack on Guillemont was arranged to be carried out by the 72nd Brigade. Our orders were to take the remainder of High Holborn and the "Z Z" trench, advancing in line with the 72nd Brigade on our right. One Company of the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers was under the orders of the O.C. 3rd Bn. Rifle Brigade and attacked on our right.

At 16.30 on the 21st, "D" Company under Lieutenant L. G. Butler, and "A" Company of the Fusiliers under Captain Bell, attacked High Holborn line and promptly came under very strong rifle and machine-gun fire from a line of trenches running at right angles to High Holborn. This line of trenches was on high ground and had never been touched by our guns.

"D" Company reached the High Holborn road losing all their Officers and three-quarters of the Company. The remainder of the Company, twenty-three men, under Sergeant Veneer, hung on magnificently in an impossible position until ordered to withdraw after dark. Captain Bell of the Fusiliers also lost three-quarters of his Company and could get no further than the High Holborn line. Meanwhile, the attack on our right had again failed and Captain Bell's right flank was in the air. He was losing heavily from Germans in the quarry behind him and great credit is due to him for ever reaching the position he did. Though the casualties of these two Companies were very heavy (about 75 per cent.) they undoubtedly accounted for very many Germans. Sergeant Veneer, one of the best shots of the 3rd Battalion before the war, fired about 150 rounds at 40 yards range at Germans in the orchard. The Royal Fusiliers were shooting at even closer range and Vickers and Lewis-guns were flanking this line of trenches from Guillemont station. One 4.5 inch howitzer belonging to our Divisional Artillery was dropping shells right into this line of trenches one after another, but no sooner had one lot of Germans been knocked out than others appeared from underground tunnels and replaced them.

Lieutenant L. G. Butler's conduct on this occasion was most gallant. While lying wounded and paralysed in a shell hole, just behind the point reached by his Company he tore up his maps and papers and kept encouraging the men to hang on. Two Riflemen tried to get him back but he would not let them touch him, saying they would only get shot themselves. Later on they went to him again but still he would not let them touch him although he was fast dying. On being

ordered to withdraw after dark, these two Riflemen again went to get him back but could find no trace of him. There is little doubt that he was blown to pieces by a shell.

The next day, 22nd, the Battalion was relieved by a Battalion of the 20th Division and we went into rest near Albert. After five days in a camp with all the men lying out in the open (it rained hard the whole time) the Division went up again into the line to hold the trenches between Delville wood and High wood. The Battalion was in Brigade reserve. We had received a draft of one Officer and 200 men during the time we were out of the line.

On 1 September at 12 noon we were ordered to counter-attack Orchard and Tea trenches which had been lost the night before.

Knowing nothing of the ground and very little of the situation, the Battalion left Montauban at 14.30 and marched up Caterpillar valley into the trenches. Communication trenches to the front line were non-existent and the three attacking Companies "A" "B" and "D" went over the open into the trenches whence they were going to jump off, without a shot being fired at them, from Pear street, and Chesney walk.

Zero time was 6 p.m. at which hour "A" Company on the left, under 2nd Lieutenant N. C. Denton, "B" Company in the centre under Captain Hon. M. Boscawen and "D" Company under Lieutenant R. Edwardes jumped off. They lost 55 per cent. getting to Orchard trench, and Tea trench 250 yards further on, was out of the question, although "C" Company under Lieutenant R. E. Vernède had gone up to reinforce. This attack clearly proved the impossibility of making a successful attack against a strongly

defended line without proper preparation. By the hour the Companies had got into their jumping off trenches it was time for them to attack as the creeping barrage was arranged for 6 p.m. The Germans were holding Orchard trench very lightly but Tea trench and Poppy lane very strongly. Our casualties were from machine-guns and rifle fire from two Tea and Poppy trenches and amounted on this day to one Officer and thirty-five other ranks killed ; four Officers and 166 other ranks wounded ; five men missing. On 2 September, we were relieved and went back to our original camp near Albert. Our total casualties on the Somme were eight Officers and sixty-seven other ranks killed ; twelve Officers and 382 other ranks wounded ; twenty-three other ranks missing.

On 6 September, the Division left the Somme and took over the line at Vimy ridge six miles north of Arras on 12 September, coming into the IVth Corps commanded by Lieutenant-General Sir Henry Wilson. The Vimy ridge where we stayed until 25 October was very quiet and a nice rest after the Somme. On 25 October we left the Vimy ridge and on the 27th took over trenches from the 40th Division at Loos. (Map 36C.)

This sector was fairly quiet, reliefs being carried out every eight days. During November and December the enemy became more active and several camouflages were blown by both sides. Christmas Day was spent at Mazirgarbe, the men having dinner in the brewery. (Map 36B.)

---

## WAR-RECORD OF 3RD BATTALION. 1917.

The whole of January was spent carrying out normal trench warfare with eight day reliefs. On 5 January the enemy raided the 8th Bn. Buffs, capturing several prisoners which necessitated our having to relieve them one day in advance as it was thought that the prisoners might have disclosed the day of relief.

On 12 February the Battalion was to carry out a double raid on the enemy trenches immediately north of the Loos Crassier. Training for this raid had been carried out for a fortnight in advance, and had become very complicated. The 1st Bn. North Staffordshire (72nd Infantry Brigade) was to carry out a raid on our left the same night at 9 p.m. (three hours before our zero). The raid was carried out and we heard that it had not been successful, but could not find out why. (Map 36C.)

At 11.45 p.m. (quarter of an hour before our zero) a message was received from our Brigade to the effect that smoke was not to be used in our raid, as the wind conditions were very favourable for smoke. Colonel Kewley could not understand why this order had been sent. Time was getting very short and by the time that the situation had been confirmed with Colonel Pigot and the trench mortar specialists it only wanted seven minutes to zero. At 23.55 hours he heard that the reason for not using smoke was that it had proved of great hindrance to the North Staffordshire and had also silhouetted the raiding party on account of the glare caused by the bursting mortars. In view of this, authority was obtained from Brigade to cancel the raid, as it was considered quite impossible to carry out

the raid without the use of smoke. By the time that the authority had been obtained it wanted only two minutes to zero, and messengers were dispatched to the raiding party and all specialists, etc., who were co-operating to say the raid would not be carried out. At zero two batteries of 18-pounders which were assisting in the barrage and who could not be warned in time, and also some Vickers-guns, opened fire; this brought heavy retaliation from the German trench mortars and field-guns which lasted for twenty minutes, when things became normal again. The raiding party had been got under cover before the barrage started. On the 13th the whole Division was relieved and the Battalion marched back to Annezin, a mile west of Bethune, where we stayed three weeks. (**Map 36B.**)

On 2 March we left Annezin and marched to Fouquières where we remained for two nights. On the 4th we marched to Fosse 10, and relieved the 5th Canadian Battalion which was in Divisional reserve. Next day reconnoitring parties went up to reconnoitre the line in the Angres sector. On the 9th we relieved the 8th Bn. Buffs in this sector. The enemy were very active our first day in trenches and our "heavies" broke up a party of the enemy who were apparently preparing to attack. Reliefs were carried out every six days; the whole of this time the enemy were very active with their artillery. On 25th our trenches were again very heavily bombarded and when the bombardment lifted off our front line, a party of the enemy was immediately dispersed by our Lewis-gun fire. The Battalion was congratulated by the General the next day on its steadiness. (**Map 36C.**)

During the first week in April our guns of all calibres carried out heavy bombardments of the enemy



lines in preparation for the Vimy ridge attack which was to take place on the 9th. On 26th two strong fighting patrols entered the enemy lines and obtained important information.

On 13 April the Battalion was ordered to relieve the 1st Marine L.I. in the Angres 1 sector. During the relief, it was disclosed that the Germans were retiring and the Marine L.I. accompanied by "D" Company went over the top. The night of the 13-14th was spent in straightening out the confusion which had occurred owing to the advance having started in the middle of a relief.

On the morning of the 14th, the Battalion received orders to take Lièven two miles south-west of Lens together with the Crook and Crazy redoubts on the eastern side of the town, and to consolidate on that line, pushing forward patrols to keep contact with the enemy. "B" Company was ordered to advance with three platoons in line, each platoon finding its own point. "A" and "C" Companies were in support on the right and left respectively and "D" Company in reserve; advance to commence at 10 a.m. Lièvin was taken without opposition but on emerging into the open, owing to the Battalion at this time having got rather ahead of the advancing troops, the leading men came under rifle fire from Crook and Crazy redoubts and also from the flanks. Crook was very quickly taken by means of covering fire from Lewis-guns placed in houses slightly on the flanks without a single casualty being incurred, and by 3 p.m. the Battalion was in possession of the whole of its objectives and had only had about three casualties.

On the 15th, "D" Company, which had not come

into action on the 14th, was sent through with orders to get in touch with the enemy and if possible, get possession of the enemy's position running along the western edge of Lens. This Company very soon met with heavy opposition and took up positions running along a line about 800 yards east of the Crook-Crazy line. On the night of the 15-16th, the Battalion was relieved by the 8th Bn. Buffs without any change in the general situation having taken place, and went into Brigade support in Lièvin where they remained until the night of the 18-19th when they were relieved by the 7th Bn. South Stafford Regiment and went into billets in Bully Grenay. (**Map 36<sup>B</sup>.**)

Our total casualties in this attack on the Lens position were as follows—Killed: Two Officers and five other ranks. Wounded: Twenty-seven other ranks. Missing: Eleven other ranks.

For the next seven weeks, the Battalion was out of the line carrying out training.

On 6 June at 11 p.m. the Battalion left camp and marched to General Headquarters line where advanced parties met us and allotted trenches and hedges to Companies, which were only roughly known by Companies before. Water had been sent up on the 5th and was distributed to Companies where most convenient for them. The barrels which had been filled had leaked and some were empty. It would have been better to have kept the water in petrol cans except for the fact that empty tins were required to be sent back. The noise of our guns all night made sleep out of the question for most people but complete silence had been enforced in camp on the evening of 6th from 6 p.m. till 10 p.m. which allowed the men a bit of rest. (**Map 28.**)

## ATTACK ON THE MESSINES RIDGE, 7 JUNE.

From zero hour onwards, sleep was impossible for most people though a certain number of the men slept well till 11.50 a.m. when we got orders to start. At 12.35 p.m., the Battalion jumped off in artillery formation following the line of red flags laid out as far as old French trench. These flags were a great convenience. A halt of twenty minutes was made about the old British Front line where touch was gained with the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers on our left. From here, Oosttaverne wood and Denys wood were plainly visible, and thanks to the model at Reninghelst which all N.C.O.s had seen, there was no fear of losing direction. This model was of the very greatest assistance in every way, even after passing "Black line," and would have been better still if it had included the 50' contour.

At the old British Front line, Captain Boscawen was left in charge to bring the Battalion on and the Commanding Officer went on with the F.O.O. to reconnoitre "Black line" and find out the situation in Oosttaverne wood.

At 2.50 p.m. the Battalion arrived at "Black line" still in artillery formation as it was not in enemy's view. The situation was exactly according to the scheme on "Black line," and it was only necessary to inform Company Commanders of this fact and to point out a few landmarks in front to give them their direction and they were ready to start.

At 3 p.m. the two leading Companies deployed and advanced from "Black line" to get under the barrage which had started slowly at about 2.57 p.m. and became really heavy at about 3.5 p.m. The barrage was quite perfect and the men were all delighted with

it. Many of them said they were getting the dust in their faces, and the line of dust and smoke certainly appeared to be absolutely regular. From later accounts Officers of the leading Company say they were fifty to eighty yards from the barrage, varying according to the slight irregularity of the barrage itself. The leading Company shot a few Germans as they came up to them but the majority were taken prisoners, as they surrendered willingly.

On arrival at the "Green line," the leading Company went on with the barrage, and say that they got up to the houses which were then unoccupied, but finding no one on their flanks and realizing that they had gone too far, they came back to the proper "Green line." This is possible, for Captain Boscawen saw them coming back to the "Green line" from a point in advance of it. We had no sooner started consolidating the "Green line" than the enemy started sniping at us which proves that they had not run away and had some fight left in them. A barrage such as we had, however, makes it prohibitive for the best troops in the world to do anything.

We captured the following :—

Two serviceable 7.7 mm. guns, taken at the houses and ready for removal, and two damaged 7.7 mm. guns, wheels broken and guns damaged, also two machine-guns which we took into use in the front line; a third slightly damaged machine-gun with a good number of rifles were sent back at nightfall.

The number of prisoners taken is uncertain, as they were pushed back without escort and many of them joined in with the 19th Division escorting parties on the right. An Officer and forty to fifty men are known to have been taken.

Patrols went forward from "Green line" under the barrage up to houses but could not get them owing to the barrage. There was no resistance offered anywhere.

The casualties up to date were only one Officer and one Rifleman wounded by our own barrage.

The O.C. then sent forward a carrying party which dumped the French wire which had been carried up from General Headquarters line and took barbed concertina wire from the Hun dump. The Officer in charge of this carrying party, Lieutenant A. R. Buxton, was killed and three men wounded by snipers in the houses. During the attack the Germans did not shell the attacking Companies or Battalion Headquarters at all, but they were putting a certain number behind the "Black line."

At about 4 p.m. the Germans started shelling round Headquarters and on "Black line" and Oostaverne wood, with 7.7 mm. guns. They went on doing this all the evening but did practically no damage. Up to midnight on the 7-8th June, our casualties totalled forty-seven, but the majority were caused by one of our own heavies which was firing short. This howitzer also caused a good many casualties in the Battalion on our right.

Consolidation of our gains was started at once on Odonto trench and the one in front of it and also two strong points on the Military road. These strong points were joined up roughly during the night of 7-8th.

Two tanks came across our front from south of Oostaverne wood going towards Bug wood, after the "Green line" had been taken. After having a look round Odonto trench they went home by the way they had come up.

During the night of the 12-13th June, the Battalion relieved the 12th Bn. Durham L.I. in Battle wood; during the relief the Durham L.I. was ordered to establish a forward post on the eastern end of the Spoil bank, north of the canal, and the Battalion on the left, a post on the railway. It was also understood that the 18th London Regiment on the right were going to establish posts on the centre and western end of the Spoil bank.

At about 5 a.m. on the 13th, the situation was as follows: "B" on the left and "D" on the right were holding the line. "A" Company was in support and "C" Company in reserve in the old German front line; on the left, the 12th Bn. Royal Fusiliers was holding Impartial trench, and on the right the 18th London were holding the Triangular Spoil bank and the 19th London had a post at the cellars. The Battalion had also a Lewis-gun and a small rifle post on the Spoil bank but the posts on the flanks had not been established. The situation in front of the line was now very obscure and another patrol was sent forward to try to ascertain the situation. This patrol came under machine-gun fire both from the Spoil bank and from the railway embankment but reached its objective, and a wounded corporal who got back said that the Spoil bank appeared to be occupied both by the enemy and ourselves. The enemy was now very much on the alert and it was impossible to reinforce the forward posts or to get these posts back on to the main position. During the day, our posts were driven off the greater portion of the Spoil bank and when darkness came they were ordered to be withdrawn.

During the night 13-14th June the 8th Bn. Buffs relieved the Battalion on the Battle wood front and the

Battalion was ordered to relieve that portion of the 141st Brigade north of the canal which was not relieved by one company of the Buffs which was occupying the Triangular Spoil bank. This operation was completed by about 4 a.m. At 7.30 p.m. the Buffs advanced to the attack, a platoon of "A" Company having previously been sent forward into the Triangular Spoil bank so as to keep in close touch with the situation.

During the night of the 14-15th, the Battalion was heavily shelled but fortunately had few casualties. At daybreak on the 15th, the remainder of "A" Company was moved into the Triangular Spoil bank. At about 12 noon, the Battalion was ordered to return to camp without being relieved and this was quickly carried out. A point of interest was that four men, whom it had been impossible to withdraw on the night of 13-14th, were out in shell-holes in front of Battle wood during our creeping barrage on the evening of the 14th and were not touched.

Our total casualties for this period were as follows—Killed: Officers: *Nil*. Other ranks: Two killed, twenty-seven wounded, and two missing.

On the 15th Battalion returned to Micmac camp and on the 19th relieved the 1st Bn. North Staffordshire on the left of Battle wood, remaining in the line four days and being relieved by the 8th Bn. Buffs. For the remainder of the month we found large working parties.

On 3 July we entrained for Cremarest about six miles east of Boulogne, where we remained until the 18th, when we moved by march route to Micmac Camp near Ouderdom preparatory to going into the fight.

#### ATTACK ON PASSCHENDAELE, 30 JULY.

At 6 p.m. on the evening of 30 July, the Battalion

marched out and after halting for a hot meal at 9 p.m. resumed its march via "P" route to Hedge street tunnels (its assembly position), reaching them without any difficulty owing to the excellent way the route was marked out, and the careful reconnaissance of the last portion of the route which had been made during the day by platoon guides who met the Battalion at Knoll road. We spent the night without any incident worthy of note, and at 7.35 a.m., started to file out and take up positions in artillery formation, the right of the Battalion resting on the junction of Iliad trench and Iliad avenue. This forming up was considerably interfered with by hostile shelling which at times became very heavy, and "A" Company had the misfortune to lose its Company Commander, Company Sergeant-Major and another Officer, which might have caused considerably more confusion than it did, had not 2nd Lieutenant H. Brierly quickly realized the position and taken charge of the Company in a most efficient manner; nevertheless a delay was caused and this Company slightly lost direction, finding itself during the advance in rear of "D" Company instead of in line with and on the right of that Company.

On 31 July at 8.35 a.m. the Battalion advanced and almost at once came under heavy machine-gun fire, and it became necessary to deploy and advance by short rushes which, owing to the heavy and difficult going, was very exhausting. A machine-gun which had escaped detection and had not been "mopped up" by previous waves, opened enfilade fire on our right but this was dealt with by a Lewis-gun of "C" Company who were in support on the right, and was quickly silenced at a range where no rifle-grenade would have been of the slightest use. Owing to the trouble on the



the left got somewhat in advance of the Battalion and was on the southern edge of the wood. At this time no one on the left, now came up on the left, with the 21st Brigade. At 4.45 "B" Company was passing the foremost line of the Battalion quickened up, this, although it was at a distance off, momentarily quieted the guns and "B" Company, seizing the opportunity, pushed forward and established itself in front, its actual orders being to advance where it could see down the slopes of Basseville Beek and to consolidate on the right. "C" Company were ordered to form a right flank, it being impossible to push on, there being no one on our flanks. The line which was eventually consolidated ran through Bodmin copse and this line was held through the night of 1-2nd August, when the Battalion was relieved by the 8th Bn. Buffs and returned to the street dug-outs, where it remained till the night of 4th August, being relieved on that night by the 1st Bn. Royal Sussex when it returned to the camp and left on the 30th.

During the advance, a hostile aeroplane was most extensive, flying very low, marking down our positions, firing at the troops and dropping egg bombs. Our aeroplanes were not in evidence and not a single call for flares was made. One aeroplane was brought down by Acting-Corporal Ripper by means of Lewis-gun fire. An attempt was made to establish Battalion Headquarters in Iliad lane, but as it was quite impossible to

get messages in and out, owing to intense artillery fire, a return had to be made to Hedge street tunnels. During the whole of the operations, the hostile shelling was very severe and this, coupled with the rain, made consolidation, communication and clearing of casualties extremely difficult.

Our total casualties for period 30 July-4 August were—Killed: Officers five; other ranks 42. Wounded: Officers two; other ranks 175. Missing: other ranks 10.

We remained in this sector until 15 September taking our turn in the line every four days and coming back to camp at Micmac or Dickebush camps alternately.

The remainder of the month of September was occupied in moving to the Somme and on the 30th we took over the trenches at Vadencourt from the first Dragoon Guards of the Dismounted Brigade. (Map 62<sup>c</sup>.)

Vadencourt is two miles west of the canal from St. Quentin to Le Catelet and roughly, midway between them. This sector was a complete holiday after the heavy shelling of the Ypres salient. Our line was 1,500 yards from the enemy and night patrols had great difficulty in finding their way about "No Man's Land." Considering the number of patrols, there were few encounters with the enemy. On our right we had the French, and one of our posts, named International post, was made up of French and English. Everything was very quiet until 30 November during which time the Battalion did eight days in the line, eight days in support or reserve, being relieved alternately by the 8th Bn. Buffs and 12th Bn. Fusiliers. On the 30th the Battalion was resting at Bernes when orders were received to take up a strong position to protect the left of our Division, as

the enemy had heavily counter-attacked the Division on our left. We remained on this high ground for two nights in the open and were eventually relieved by a Composite Company of the Household Cavalry Battalion and returned to billets at Montigny.

On 3 December we took over the line at Vadencourt from the 12th Bn. Royal Fusiliers. The enemy was very much more active than he had been previously. One of our patrols found some pamphlets of the proclamation of the Russian Revolutionary Government which had been placed near our wire by an enemy patrol. On another night a patrol tried to rush our advanced outpost. They were driven off leaving their rifles and one dead German. On 8 December we were relieved by the 6th Dismounted Cavalry Battalion. On 21 December we moved into a sector slightly north of our old one and went into Brigade support. On the 23rd we took over the line at Hargicourt relieving the 12th Bn. Royal Fusiliers. Christmas Day was spent in the trenches; the enemy exhibited an illuminated board bearing the words "A Merry Christmas." This board was destroyed by Lewis-gun fire.

On 27th we were relieved by the 7th Bn. Northamptonshire Regiment and returned to billets at Vendelles. The 29 December was kept as Christmas day, the men having Dinners in their huts.

---

## WAR-RECORD OF 3RD BATTALION. 1918.

On 2 January the Battalion was relieved by the 8th Bn. Royal West Kent Regiment and moved to billets at Hancourt where we remained until the 8th when we moved again to Vendelles. On the 12th we relieved the 8th Bn. Queen's in the line at Hargicourt. On the 16th we were relieved by the 12th Bn. Royal Fusiliers and went into reserve in Templeux quarries. On the 20th "D" Company, comprising two Officers, forty-six other ranks and five R.E. raided the German front and support lines—two prisoners and valuable information were obtained. Unfortunately our casualties were heavy, 2nd Lieutenant Munday and eight other ranks missing, one killed and twenty wounded. In the evening we were relieved by the 9th Bn. Royal Sussex and went back to billets in Vraignes. On 6 February we again went into the line at Hargicourt for eight days. On the 23rd we relieved the 8th Bn. Queen's at Hargicourt and on the 28th we were relieved by the 2/5th Bn. East Lancashire and went back for ten days' rest and training at Montecourt. On 12 March we relieved the Dismounted Cavalry in the line at Vadencourt. (Map 62C.)

### MARCH—APRIL.

The Brigade had taken over the piece of front stretching from Le Verguier in the north to Watling street in the south and to avoid a three-cornered contest, the Battalion had volunteered for and been given a short but permanent portion of the front, namely from Ascension farm (exclusive) in the north to

Watling street (inclusive) in the south. On the north the front was held alternately by the 8th Bn. Queen's and the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers. On the south the 72nd Infantry Brigade extended the front down to and across the Omignon river. The chief features of this part of the line were: (1) The broad "No Man's Land" which extended to 1,500 yards in places. This "No Man's Land" was a valley; the high ground on the east and west being held by the opposing sides, the valley itself contained a wood (Somerville wood) which was a constant source of trouble to patrols. (2) On the north the high ground round Le Verguier formed a very important tactical feature, and (3) on the south the line ran right forward to the village of Pontru where "No Man's Land" resumed normal proportions.

The Battalion front was held by two Companies, one in front with one in support. Battalion Headquarters were at Cooker's quarry and the other two Companies were in reserve, resting at Vadencourt. The Transport lines were at Bernes.

It now became known that the enemy intended shortly to make a big attack on our front and accordingly an "alarm action" was carried out at 2.30 a.m. on the morning of the 15th inst. Our dispositions at this time were not satisfactory but on account of dug-out and other accommodation, it was not possible to alter them rapidly; however Battalion Headquarters moved from Cooker's quarry to a very small dug-out in Caubrières wood and set about improving the accommodation there.

On the evening of the 20th the Commanding Officer on returning from riding round the posts (which in this sector it was possible to do) was ordered to report at Brigade Headquarters immediately and was then

informed that the enemy were expected to attack next morning and would probably use a large number of gas-shells. Companies were immediately warned and a special inspection of gas helmets, etc., was carried out. As already mentioned our dispositions at this time were not what one would have wished but this could not be helped, and movements of all Companies in the event of an attack had been carefully rehearsed. Moreover the trench systems were bad, being both very wide and no depth, in fact, merely death traps. The systems behind were very similar, and were obvious to all, for there had been no concealment. This is only mentioned to show that our preparations were not as good as they might have been.

On the evening of the 20th the dispositions of the Battalion were as follows: "B" Company holding outpost line with Headquarters at Dean quarry, "C" Company in support, Headquarters at Cookers' quarry, "A" and "D" Companies in reserve at Vadencourt, complete with cooks, etc. Battalion Headquarters Caubrières wood.

At 4.40 a.m. on the morning of the 21st the enemy opened a terrific bombardment and the battle had begun.

No patrols were allowed in "No Man's Land" after 2 a.m. as our Artillery had orders to sweep it. This was seemingly a tactical error, for the enemy, aided by the noise of the bombardment and a thick ground mist, were thus able to mass without being discovered. All communication in front of Battalion Headquarters was almost at once severed, as the lines were cut and the mist prevented any visual signalling being used. This last had been largely relied upon as the ground was exceptionally suitable. The two Companies at Vaden-

lines in preparation for the Vimy ridge attack which was to take place on the 9th. On 26th two strong fighting patrols entered the enemy lines and obtained important information.

On 13 April the Battalion was ordered to relieve the 1st Marine L.I. in the Angres 1 sector. During the relief, it was disclosed that the Germans were retiring and the Marine L.I. accompanied by "D" Company went over the top. The night of the 13-14th was spent in straightening out the confusion which had occurred owing to the advance having started in the middle of a relief.

On the morning of the 14th, the Battalion received orders to take Lièven two miles south-west of Lens together with the Crook and Crazy redoubts on the eastern side of the town, and to consolidate on that line, pushing forward patrols to keep contact with the enemy. "B" Company was ordered to advance with three platoons in line, each platoon finding its own point. "A" and "C" Companies were in support on the right and left respectively and "D" Company in reserve; advance to commence at 10 a.m. Lièvin was taken without opposition but on emerging into the open, owing to the Battalion at this time having got rather ahead of the advancing troops, the leading men came under rifle fire from Crook and Crazy redoubts and also from the flanks. Crook was very quickly taken by means of covering fire from Lewis-guns placed in houses slightly on the flanks without a single casualty being incurred, and by 3 p.m. the Battalion was in possession of the whole of its objectives and had only had about three casualties.

On the 15th, "D" Company, which had not come

into action on the 14th, was sent through with orders to get in touch with the enemy and if possible, get possession of the enemy's position running along the western edge of Lens. This Company very soon met with heavy opposition and took up positions running along a line about 800 yards east of the Crook-Crazy line. On the night of the 15-16th, the Battalion was relieved by the 8th Bn. Buffs without any change in the general situation having taken place, and went into Brigade support in Lièvin where they remained until the night of the 18-19th when they were relieved by the 7th Bn. South Stafford Regiment and went into billets in Bully Grenay. (**Map 36<sup>B</sup>**.)

Our total casualties in this attack on the Lens position were as follows—Killed: Two Officers and five other ranks. Wounded: Twenty-seven other ranks. Missing: Eleven other ranks.

For the next seven weeks, the Battalion was out of the line carrying out training.

On 6 June at 11 p.m. the Battalion left camp and marched to General Headquarters line where advanced parties met us and allotted trenches and hedges to Companies, which were only roughly known by Companies before. Water had been sent up on the 5th and was distributed to Companies where most convenient for them. The barrels which had been filled had leaked and some were empty. It would have been better to have kept the water in petrol cans except for the fact that empty tins were required to be sent back. The noise of our guns all night made sleep out of the question for most people but complete silence had been enforced in camp on the evening of 6th from 6 p.m. till 10 p.m. which allowed the men a bit of rest. (**Map 28**.)



## ATTACK ON THE MESSINES RIDGE, 7 JUNE.

From zero hour onwards, sleep was impossible for most people though a certain number of the men slept well till 11.50 a.m. when we got orders to start. At 12.35 p.m., the Battalion jumped off in artillery formation following the line of red flags laid out as far as old French trench. These flags were a great convenience. A halt of twenty minutes was made about the old British Front line where touch was gained with the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers on our left. From here, Oosttaverne wood and Denys wood were plainly visible, and thanks to the model at Reninghelst which all N.C.O.s had seen, there was no fear of losing direction. This model was of the very greatest assistance in every way, even after passing "Black line," and would have been better still if it had included the 50' contour.

At the old British Front line, Captain Boscawen was left in charge to bring the Battalion on and the Commanding Officer went on with the F.O.O. to reconnoitre "Black line," and find out the situation in Oosttaverne wood.

At 2.50 p.m. the Battalion arrived at "Black line" still in artillery formation as it was not in enemy's view. The situation was exactly according to the scheme on "Black line," and it was only necessary to inform Company Commanders of this fact and to point out a few landmarks in front to give them their direction and they were ready to start.

At 3 p.m. the two leading Companies deployed and advanced from "Black line" to get under the barrage which had started slowly at about 2.57 p.m. and became really heavy at about 3.5 p.m. The barrage was quite perfect and the men were all delighted with

it. Many of them said they were getting the dust in their faces, and the line of dust and smoke certainly appeared to be absolutely regular. From later accounts Officers of the leading Company say they were fifty to eighty yards from the barrage, varying according to the slight irregularity of the barrage itself. The leading Company shot a few Germans as they came up to them but the majority were taken prisoners, as they surrendered willingly.

On arrival at the "Green line," the leading Company went on with the barrage, and say that they got up to the houses which were then unoccupied, but finding no one on their flanks and realizing that they had gone too far, they came back to the proper "Green line." This is possible, for Captain Boscawen saw them coming back to the "Green line" from a point in advance of it. We had no sooner started consolidating the "Green line" than the enemy started sniping at us which proves that they had not run away and had some fight left in them. A barrage such as we had, however, makes it prohibitive for the best troops in the world to do anything.

We captured the following :—

Two serviceable 7.7 mm. guns, taken at the houses and ready for removal, and two damaged 7.7 mm. guns, wheels broken and guns damaged, also two machine-guns which we took into use in the front line; a third slightly damaged machine-gun with a good number of rifles were sent back at nightfall.

The number of prisoners taken is uncertain, as they were pushed back without escort and many of them joined in with the 19th Division escorting parties on the right. An Officer and forty to fifty men are known to have been taken.

Patrols went forward from "Green line" under the barrage up to houses but could not get them owing to the barrage. There was no resistance offered anywhere.

The casualties up to date were only one Officer and one Rifleman wounded by our own barrage.

The O.C. then sent forward a carrying party which dumped the French wire which had been carried up from General Headquarters line and took barbed concertina wire from the Hun dump. The Officer in charge of this carrying party, Lieutenant A. R. Buxton, was killed and three men wounded by snipers in the houses. During the attack the Germans did not shell the attacking Companies or Battalion Headquarters at all, but they were putting a certain number behind the "Black line."

At about 4 p.m. the Germans started shelling round Headquarters and on "Black line" and Oosttaverne wood, with 7.7 mm. guns. They went on doing this all the evening but did practically no damage. Up to midnight on the 7-8th June, our casualties totalled forty-seven, but the majority were caused by one of our own heavies which was firing short. This howitzer also caused a good many casualties in the Battalion on our right.

Consolidation of our gains was started at once on Odonto trench and the one in front of it and also two strong points on the Military road. These strong points were joined up roughly during the night of 7-8th.

Two tanks came across our front from south of Oosttaverne wood going towards Bug wood, after the "Green line" had been taken. After having a look round Odonto trench they went home by the way they had come up.

During the night of the 12-13th June, the Battalion relieved the 12th Bn. Durham L.I. in Battle wood; during the relief the Durham L.I. was ordered to establish a forward post on the eastern end of the Spoil bank, north of the canal, and the Battalion on the left, a post on the railway. It was also understood that the 18th London Regiment on the right were going to establish posts on the centre and western end of the Spoil bank.

At about 5 a.m. on the 13th, the situation was as follows: "B" on the left and "D" on the right were holding the line. "A" Company was in support and "C" Company in reserve in the old German front line; on the left, the 12th Bn. Royal Fusiliers was holding Impartial trench, and on the right the 18th London were holding the Triangular Spoil bank and the 19th London had a post at the cellars. The Battalion had also a Lewis-gun and a small rifle post on the Spoil bank but the posts on the flanks had not been established. The situation in front of the line was now very obscure and another patrol was sent forward to try to ascertain the situation. This patrol came under machine-gun fire both from the Spoil bank and from the railway embankment but reached its objective, and a wounded corporal who got back said that the Spoil bank appeared to be occupied both by the enemy and ourselves. The enemy was now very much on the alert and it was impossible to reinforce the forward posts or to get these posts back on to the main position. During the day, our posts were driven off the greater portion of the Spoil bank and when darkness came they were ordered to be withdrawn.

During the night 13-14th June the 8th Bn. Buffs relieved the Battalion on the Battle wood front and the

Battalion was ordered to relieve that portion of the 141st Brigade north of the canal which was not relieved by one company of the Buffs which was occupying the Triangular Spoil bank. This operation was completed by about 4 a.m. At 7.30 p.m. the Buffs advanced to the attack, a platoon of "A" Company having previously been sent forward into the Triangular Spoil bank so as to keep in close touch with the situation.

During the night of the 14-15th, the Battalion was heavily shelled but fortunately had few casualties. At daybreak on the 15th, the remainder of "A" Company was moved into the Triangular Spoil bank. At about 12 noon, the Battalion was ordered to return to camp without being relieved and this was quickly carried out. A point of interest was that four men, whom it had been impossible to withdraw on the night of 13-14th, were out in shell-holes in front of Battle wood during our creeping barrage on the evening of the 14th and were not touched.

Our total casualties for this period were as follows—Killed: Officers: *Nil*. Other ranks: Two killed, twenty-seven wounded, and two missing.

On the 15th Battalion returned to Micmac camp and on the 19th relieved the 1st Bn. North Staffordshire on the left of Battle wood, remaining in the line four days and being relieved by the 8th Bn. Buffs. For the remainder of the month we found large working parties.

On 3 July we entrained for Cremarest about six miles east of Boulogne, where we remained until the 18th, when we moved by march route to Micmac Camp near Ouderdom preparatory to going into the fight.

#### ATTACK ON PASSCHENDAELE, 30 JULY.

At 6 p.m. on the evening of 30 July, the Battalion

marched out and after halting for a hot meal at 9 p.m. resumed its march via "P" route to Hedge street tunnels (its assembly position), reaching them without any difficulty owing to the excellent way the route was marked out, and the careful reconnaissance of the last portion of the route which had been made during the day by platoon guides who met the Battalion at Knoll road. We spent the night without any incident worthy of note, and at 7.35 a.m., started to file out and take up positions in artillery formation, the right of the Battalion resting on the junction of Iliad trench and Iliad avenue. This forming up was considerably interfered with by hostile shelling which at times became very heavy, and "A" Company had the misfortune to lose its Company Commander, Company Sergeant-Major and another Officer, which might have caused considerably more confusion than it did, had not 2nd Lieutenant H. Brierly quickly realized the position and taken charge of the Company in a most efficient manner; nevertheless a delay was caused and this Company slightly lost direction, finding itself during the advance in rear of "D" Company instead of in line with and on the right of that Company.

On 31 July at 8.35 a.m. the Battalion advanced and almost at once came under heavy machine-gun fire, and it became necessary to deploy and advance by short rushes which, owing to the heavy and difficult going, was very exhausting. A machine-gun which had escaped detection and had not been "mopped up" by previous waves, opened enfilade fire on our right but this was dealt with by a Lewis-gun of "C" Company who were in support on the right, and was quickly silenced at a range where no rifle-grenade would have been of the slightest use. Owing to the trouble on the

right, "D" Company on the left got somewhat in advance of the remainder of the Battalion and was ordered to halt somewhere on the southern edge of Bodmin copse, there being at this time no one on either flank. "A" Company now came up on the left, joining up "D" Company with the 21st Brigade. At about 10 a.m. just as "B" Company was passing through what was then the foremost line of the Brigade, our barrage quickened up, this, although it was a considerable distance off, momentarily quieted the enemy machine-guns and "B" Company, seizing this opportunity, pushed forward and established itself some way in front, its actual orders being to gain a position where it could see down the slopes leading to the Basseville Beek and to consolidate on that line. "C" Company were ordered to form a defensive right flank, it being impossible to push on, and there being no one on our flanks.

The line which was eventually consolidated ran approximately by Bodmin copse and this line was held until the night of 1-2nd August, when the Battalion was relieved by the 8th Bn. Buffs and returned to Hedge street dug-outs, where it remained till the night of 3-4th August, being relieved on that night by the 9th Bn. Royal Sussex when it returned to the camp it had left on the 30th.

During the advance, a hostile aeroplane was most offensive, flying very low, marking down our positions, firing at the troops and dropping egg bombs. Our aeroplanes were not in evidence and not a single call for flares was made. One aeroplane was brought down by Acting-Corporal Ripper by means of Lewis-gun fire. An attempt was made to establish Battalion Headquarters in Iliad lane, but as it was quite impossible to

get messages in and out, owing to intense artillery fire, a return had to be made to Hedge street tunnels. During the whole of the operations, the hostile shelling was very severe and this, coupled with the rain, made consolidation, communication and clearing of casualties extremely difficult.

Our total casualties for period 30 July-4 August were—Killed: Officers five; other ranks 42. Wounded: Officers two; other ranks 175. Missing: other ranks 10.

We remained in this sector until 15 September taking our turn in the line every four days and coming back to camp at Micmac or Dickebush camps alternately.

The remainder of the month of September was occupied in moving to the Somme and on the 30th we took over the trenches at Vadencourt from the first Dragoon Guards of the Dismounted Brigade. (Map 62C.)

Vadencourt is two miles west of the canal from St. Quentin to Le Catelet and roughly, midway between them. This sector was a complete holiday after the heavy shelling of the Ypres salient. Our line was 1,500 yards from the enemy and night patrols had great difficulty in finding their way about "No Man's Land." Considering the number of patrols, there were few encounters with the enemy. On our right we had the French, and one of our posts, named International post, was made up of French and English. Everything was very quiet until 30 November during which time the Battalion did eight days in the line, eight days in support or reserve, being relieved alternately by the 8th Bn. Buffs and 12th Bn. Fusiliers. On the 30th the Battalion was resting at Bernes when orders were received to take up a strong position to protect the left of our Division, as



the enemy had heavily counter-attacked the Division on our left. We remained on this high ground for two nights in the open and were eventually relieved by a Composite Company of the Household Cavalry Battalion and returned to billets at Montigny.

On 3 December we took over the line at Vadencourt from the 12th Bn. Royal Fusiliers. The enemy was very much more active than he had been previously. One of our patrols found some pamphlets of the proclamation of the Russian Revolutionary Government which had been placed near our wire by an enemy patrol. On another night a patrol tried to rush our advanced outpost. They were driven off leaving their rifles and one dead German. On 8 December we were relieved by the 6th Dismounted Cavalry Battalion. On 21 December we moved into a sector slightly north of our old one and went into Brigade support. On the 23rd we took over the line at Hargicourt relieving the 12th Bn. Royal Fusiliers. Christmas Day was spent in the trenches; the enemy exhibited an illuminated board bearing the words "A Merry Christmas." This board was destroyed by Lewis-gun fire.

On 27th we were relieved by the 7th Bn. Northamptonshire Regiment and returned to billets at Vendelles. The 29 December was kept as Christmas day, the men having Dinners in their huts.

---

## WAR-RECORD OF 3RD BATTALION. 1918.

On 2 January the Battalion was relieved by the 8th Bn. Royal West Kent Regiment and moved to billets at Hancourt where we remained until the 8th when we moved again to Vendelles. On the 12th we relieved the 8th Bn. Queen's in the line at Hargicourt. On the 16th we were relieved by the 12th Bn. Royal Fusiliers and went into reserve in Templeux quarries. On the 20th "D" Company, comprising two Officers, forty-six other ranks and five R.E. raided the German front and support lines—two prisoners and valuable information were obtained. Unfortunately our casualties were heavy, 2nd Lieutenant Munday and eight other ranks missing, one killed and twenty wounded. In the evening we were relieved by the 9th Bn. Royal Sussex and went back to billets in Vraignes. On 6 February we again went into the line at Hargicourt for eight days. On the 23rd we relieved the 8th Bn. Queen's at Hargicourt and on the 28th we were relieved by the 2/5th Bn. East Lancashire and went back for ten days' rest and training at Montecourt. On 12 March we relieved the Dismounted Cavalry in the line at Vadencourt. (Map 62C.)

### MARCH—APRIL.

The Brigade had taken over the piece of front stretching from Le Verguier in the north to Watling street in the south and to avoid a three-cornered contest, the Battalion had volunteered for and been given a short but permanent portion of the front, namely from Ascension farm (exclusive) in the north to

Watling street (inclusive) in the south. On the north the front was held alternately by the 8th Bn. Queen's and the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers. On the south the 72nd Infantry Brigade extended the front down to and across the Omignon river. The chief features of this part of the line were: (1) The broad "No Man's Land" which extended to 1,500 yards in places. This "No Man's Land" was a valley; the high ground on the east and west being held by the opposing sides, the valley itself contained a wood (Somerville wood) which was a constant source of trouble to patrols. (2) On the north the high ground round Le Verguier formed a very important tactical feature, and (3) on the south the line ran right forward to the village of Pontru where "No Man's Land" resumed normal proportions.

The Battalion front was held by two Companies, one in front with one in support. Battalion Headquarters were at Cooker's quarry and the other two Companies were in reserve, resting at Vadencourt. The Transport lines were at Bernes.

It now became known that the enemy intended shortly to make a big attack on our front and accordingly an "alarm action" was carried out at 2.30 a.m. on the morning of the 15th inst. Our dispositions at this time were not satisfactory but on account of dug-out and other accommodation, it was not possible to alter them rapidly; however Battalion Headquarters moved from Cooker's quarry to a very small dug-out in Caubrières wood and set about improving the accommodation there.

On the evening of the 20th the Commanding Officer on returning from riding round the posts (which in this sector it was possible to do) was ordered to report at Brigade Headquarters immediately and was then

informed that the enemy were expected to attack next morning and would probably use a large number of gas-shells. Companies were immediately warned and a special inspection of gas helmets, etc., was carried out. As already mentioned our dispositions at this time were not what one would have wished but this could not be helped, and movements of all Companies in the event of an attack had been carefully rehearsed. Moreover the trench systems were bad, being both very wide and no depth, in fact, merely death traps. The systems behind were very similar, and were obvious to all, for there had been no concealment. This is only mentioned to show that our preparations were not as good as they might have been.

On the evening of the 20th the dispositions of the Battalion were as follows: "B" Company holding outpost line with Headquarters at Dean quarry, "C" Company in support, Headquarters at Cookers' quarry, "A" and "D" Companies in reserve at Vadencourt, complete with cookers, etc. Battalion Headquarters Caubrières wood.

At 4.40 a.m. on the morning of the 21st the enemy opened a terrific bombardment and the battle had begun.

No patrols were allowed in "No Man's Land" after 2 a.m. as our Artillery had orders to sweep it. This was seemingly a tactical error, for the enemy, aided by the noise of the bombardment and a thick ground mist, were thus able to mass without being discovered. All communication in front of Battalion Headquarters was almost at once severed, as the lines were cut and the mist prevented any visual signalling being used. This last had been largely relied upon as the ground was exceptionally suitable. The two Companies at Vaden-

court moved as quickly as possible to their battle positions behind Dean copse, but this was a very difficult operation as it had to be carried out in gas masks and under heavy shell-fire and entailed movement to a flank. It may be said that these Companies should have been moved earlier, before the bombardment opened, but it must be remembered that the weather was very cold, and there was no accommodation on their battle positions and this was not the first occasion when the alarm had been given.

For several hours it was difficult to make out at all what was happening, but after some time it became clear that the enemy, aided by the mist, had forced his way through the outpost zone which was heavily wired and which, had it not been for the mist, would have been under direct machine-gun fire.

It now became clear that the enemy had occupied the trench running by Dean copse, where they were held by "A" and "D" Companies, who had taken up a position in the open immediately west of the trench; that "C" Company was fighting most magnificently and was holding Cookers' quarry; that "B" Company had fought very bravely but had been over-run, and that finally there was a very considerable gap in the centre with no one to fill it. About this time an Officer who was about to leave the Headquarters' dug-out came running back saying there were Germans on the stairs! Fortunately they turned out to be prisoners, but precautions were now taken in the way of destroying documents, etc.

On our northern or left flank the Queen's were putting up a great fight and were holding their own. On our southern flank the enemy appeared to be gaining ground. Our artillery had by now brought a fire

on the portion of trench by Dean copse which the enemy were holding, and as his artillery was also shelling it, evidently thinking from his aeroplane photographs that we were holding that point, its occupants must have been having a happy time.

All the same the outlook was black ; there was that nasty gap in the centre, reinforcements did not arrive, the right flank had a very unpleasant appearance and it was doubtful how long Cookers' quarry, which was now nearly isolated, could hold out. It became a race for time, if we could stick it till dark something might be done, and by the mercy of Providence and the fine leadership of Fenner, commanding "C" Company, and other Company Officers and by the gallantry of our Riflemen, stick it we did.

With dusk and the arrival of reinforcements in the shape of a squadron of our Cavalry, who had been rushed up from a long way back, a company of Fusiliers and a company from the 12th Pioneer Bn. Sherwood Foresters, new positions were organized running roughly from Bihecourt to just west of Caubrières wood to Le Verguier. At this time nothing certain was known of the fate of "C" Company, the last messenger to get back reported the enemy was nearly all round them.

Battalion Headquarters was now established at Smallfoot wood close to Brigade Headquarters. Extremely heavy shelling continued throughout the night but nothing of note occurred with the exception that "C" Company having been skilfully withdrawn by Fenner rejoined the Battalion and came into reserve. This defence by "C" Company of Cookers' quarry was a magnificent performance ; they had certainly saved the Battalion from destruction, stopping the enemy on our right flank at a critical moment ; at one time they

were fighting practically surrounded and with no other British troops within a quarter of a mile of them.

Dawn on the 22nd found the Battalion tired and weary but a lot more fighting had to be done before we were to get a rest. All this time the Queen's on our left had been putting up a most stubborn resistance and had held up the enemy on their battle positions (it is a point of interest that communication was kept up with them at one time by means of a buried cable which ran under positions actually held by the Germans) but to the north of them our line had been driven back a long way.

Early on the morning of the 22nd it was found necessary to send forward "C" Company to strengthen our left front. About 10 a.m. the Queen's were driven out of Le Verguier but the Brigade front still held on, though things were critical. At 12 noon orders were received from the Division for the Brigade to retire immediately through the 50th Division who were holding the "Green line" as the enemy had got so far forward on the flanks that there was a danger of the Brigade being surrounded.

The Battalion received orders to retire, through Fléchin to Meracourt, leaving a small party of one Officer and twenty men to cover the retirement, in conjunction with two companies of the Northamptonshire of the 73rd Infantry Brigade and two "tanks" which had now arrived. Closely engaged as we were and with units very mixed up, it was now no easy matter to break away, and Major Boscawen was accordingly sent forward to conduct the retirement in person. This he successfully did in spite of the fact that the enemy were at that very time delivering an attack. Captain Fenner was most unfortunately killed by a shell at this time.

The Battalion now retired in small formed bodies to the "Green line" at Fléchin where we expected to find the 50th Division. This withdrawal was carried out under very heavy shell fire. The 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers retiring to the north of us actually met the enemy in Bernes; an Officer in that village who was wounded was got away with difficulty in a wheelbarrow.

On arrival at Fléchin there were no signs of the 50th Division and the Battalion therefore took up fresh positions for defence. Shortly afterwards some of the 50th Division put in an appearance and the Battalion received very definite orders to continue its withdrawal. The party left behind to cover our retirement—the Officer of this Battalion was Lieutenant Birch—carried out its orders most successfully and eventually rejoined the Battalion at Meraucourt to the surprise of most people, who never expected to see it again.

The Battalion continued the withdrawal as far as Vraignes in artillery formation, where a halt was made; during this part of the withdrawal a low flying aeroplane made itself rather objectionable with machine-gun fire.

Meraucourt was reached about tea time and after having had some hot food we again moved on to Montecourt where, if all went well, we were to spend the night in huts.

The Battalion had now been on the go for a good thirty-six hours, for the greater part of which time it had been heavily engaged. Owing to the fact that we were permanently in the line, we had taken much more than the normal amount of kit up, and we consequently now found ourselves minus nearly all our kit (lucky was the Officer or man who had even a blanket), with two cooks knocked out and with big gaps in our ranks.



After about five hours rest fresh orders were received and at 4 a.m. on the morning of the 23rd we were once more on the move. The battle had now been in progress for close on forty-eight hours.

Information was received that the enemy had broken through on a wide front and was known to be advancing down the line of the Omignon river; the Battalion now moved across the Omignon and took up a position in reserve to the Brigade behind Monchy Lagache; this move was carried out in the dark in more senses than one, and orders as to smoking and talking were strictly observed; it was noticed that this was not the case in some units. (**Map 62C.**)

We had now commenced real open warfare and the benefits of the constant practice the Battalion had received in this form of fighting during our periods of rest were to make themselves felt. (Anybody can fight in a trench but to manœuvre, men must be trained.)

Some hours later the Battalion was ordered to take up a position west of Flez and to cover the retirement of troops from our own and other Divisions over Falvy bridge. We were not to start our retirement till ordered to do so by Brigade. (**Map 66D.**)

The ground over which this retirement would have to be carried out afforded very little natural cover, though there were a few very slight folds in the ground and it was rather jumpy work waiting for the word "go." For a time, mixed bodies of troops passed back through us and then we could see the enemy coming on in the distance, in fairly large bodies; the hostile shelling, though slight, was unpleasant. Two of the enemy elected to show themselves on the skyline at about 600 yards; distance was judged and a volley from about five rifles quickly made them drop, though

whether they were actually hit it is impossible to say. At last orders were received to make a move and little parties began to move gradually back, covered by others according to Text-book. At first there was a little bunching but this was soon put right by the voice of the Regimental Sergeant-Major calling—(who that has ever heard it would ever mistake it?)—"Don't bunch there you — fools, do you all want to be killed?" He might have been teaching recruits on the barrack square. Soon fire was opened on us from our southern or right flank; this was answered by Lewis-gun fire and at last we passed through troops holding a miniature bridge-head, reformed into fours and crossed over the bridge. Just as we were passing over the bridge a hostile aeroplane dropped lights but fortunately they burst too low to be seen by the enemy; at this point the Somme is a very broad marshy river flowing between very high banks.

Our casualties had been slight during the morning but the operation had been an exhausting one. The men were very tired and it was with difficulty we continued the march up the slopes away from the river to a position near Licourt where we would not be in full view. Several men fainted; one man who, contrary to orders, drank from his water-bottle, went black in the face and indulged in a fit, a fact to be told to all young Riflemen as a warning.

On arrival outside Licourt the Battalion had dinner, their second hot meal that day; the way the Battalion was fed throughout the retirement did credit to both the Transport and Quartermaster's department; at one time we were reduced to one (wounded) cooker but finished up with our full number. No questions were ever asked how this was done; there

were many derelicts at that time. That night the Battalion made itself as comfortable as it could in some old disused trenches and early on the morning of the 24th we were once more on the move, marching to Chaulnes. The 8th Division was now between us and the enemy.

On arrival at Chaulnes information was received that the enemy had forced the crossings of the Somme and were advancing on Pertain, and the Battalion was ordered to take up positions for the defence of Chaulnes. Battalion Headquarters were established at the station where large stocks of food and blankets were found, also some tents; these were issued to the troops but the blankets and tents were ordered to be returned in the morning, which, despite an early move was duly carried out, the blankets neatly rolled in bundles of ten, only to fall later into the hands of the enemy.

Soon after dark a rumour got about that German cavalry had broken through; this caused a panic amongst certain of the Transport, which proceeded to gallop *ventre à terre* in a westerly direction, two vehicles abreast in many cases, an alarming sight and a real danger to anyone who got in their way; it was rumoured that further back "caterpillars" and other ungainly objects joined in the mad rush to the sea; the devil had got hold of them like the herd of swine!

Early on the morning of the 25th the Battalion was ordered forward and took up positions in the neighbourhood of Omiecourt, the French were expecting to be counter-attacking from the south this morning, but did not do so, and artillery fire which was directed on the enemy coming from this direction was stopped, as it was thought they must be the French—from a

distance it was not possible to distinguish uniforms. This day was a most trying one, first one flank and then the other being threatened, there was no really hard fighting but further casualties were incurred and it was a very weary Battalion which withdrew (according to orders) to Chaulnes in the late afternoon. It had been a day of real confusion, nobody knowing where anyone else was.

Orders were now received for the Brigade to take up positions once more for the defence of Chaulnes and it was intimated that there would be no further withdrawal, whatever happened.

There were not sufficient leaders left now to continue with four Companies, so the Battalion reformed into two Companies and then took up its allotted position; this had to be carried out in the dark and under steady shell-fire and for accomplishing it quickly and successfully the Battalion received a very high compliment from the Brigade Commander, Brigadier-General P. V. P. Stone, C.M.G., D.S.O. The night passed and daylight arrived without any frontal attack being delivered but at 10 a.m. orders were received for the Brigade to retire via Lihons on Meharicourt; this was successfully carried out but so little was known of the position of the enemy that an advance guard was put out as well as rear and flank guards.

The Battalion marched on to Vrely where it went into billets, the only duty of the Battalion being to keep a picket on one road; positions to be occupied west of Vrely in case of alarm were selected. (Map 66<sup>E</sup>.)

This going into billets so close to the enemy was undoubtedly a risky proceeding and we had to pay for it to a certain extent next morning but the

Battalion had been fighting hard for five days, the nights were very cold, few had overcoats (as fighting order was worn by the two Companies who moved from Vadencourt on the morning of the 21st, and the other two Companies had started fighting without them) and consequently no one had had much sleep. It was plain that if we were to go on fighting, a rest of some sort was imperative.

On the morning of the 27th the enemy allowed us a good rest till 8.30 a.m., when he opened an intense bombardment on the village, whilst swarms of aeroplanes circled overhead, so we vacated the place as quickly as possible and took up a position on the crest immediately west of Vrely, where we dug in.

The weather now turned very cold but nothing of incident occurred as far as the Battalion was concerned, (we were still in reserve) till about midday on the 28th when the 8th Division withdrew through us, coming from the north-east and going in a south-westerly direction. Amongst other units to pass through, were the 2nd Battalion, some of whom we had previously seen round Omiecourt. A hurried consultation was held on the field between our Brigadier, two Brigadiers of the 8th Division, the G.S.O., two of the 8th Division and the Commanding Officer, and the Battalion was ordered to move forward covering the western exits of Vrely.

These orders were duly carried out, but the right flank was a cause of grave anxiety and the Headquarter Company, including Signallers, Orderly Room Staff, etc. was moved up on to this flank. The 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers took up a position in echelon on our right. Probably all concerned in this decision would now agree that this move forward was a mistake as we could

have covered the western exits of Vrely with fire just as well from our dug-in positions on the crest.

The enemy could now be seen to be coming on in great numbers, getting on to the house-tops on our front and rapidly advancing on the flanks. Our artillery made some very good shooting on the village and undoubtedly caused the enemy very heavy casualties. To remain was to be surrounded, so the order was given to retire and take up a position on the high ground about half a mile to the west. This withdrawal was carried out under a perfect hail of bullets from numbers of machine-guns at close range and considerable confusion could not be avoided. The Battalion however got together again and took up a position, in company with several other units, on the high ground east of Caix.

What now happened will never be clear but eventually the whole line was once more in retirement and there began what has been described as the biggest cross-country race the world has ever seen. Be it said to its credit that the 3rd Battalion still marched in fours.

We arrived in the village of Villers about dusk where we had tea. Orders were received from Brigade at about 20.00 hours to march to Castel, which was about seven miles away. It was a pouring wet night and as the route was across country we did not get into billets until early in the morning. The morning of the 29th was spent washing and cleaning, which was more than necessary. The period from the afternoon of the 29th till the 31st was spent marching to and fro between Dommartin—Hailles—Thezy without ever coming into close contact with the enemy. On 1 April we went into billets in Fouencamps and remained there until the 3rd when we again moved into better billets at

Boves, on the River Avre about four miles south-east of Amiens. (Map 62D.)

During the night everything was very quiet but about 7 a.m. the enemy commenced shelling the town very heavily. Orders were received from Brigade about 11 to move to the north of the Bois de Gentelles. It was again pouring with rain; the Battalion had been ordered to wait in an open field. There were various rumours that we were being relieved. No orders however to this effect were received until the evening of the 5th. About dusk we moved off and went by omnibus to Sailleux and billeted there the night. On the 6th we entrained for St. Valery and spent the night at the IIIrd Army Rest Camp. On the morning of the 7th we marched to Cayeux-sur-Mer where we were billeted for the purpose of refitting and reforming.

The casualties in the Battalion from 21 March to 5 April were as follows.—Killed: Seven Officers and thirty-four other ranks. Wounded: Eleven Officers and 246 other ranks. Wounded and Missing: One Officer and fourteen other ranks. Missing: Four Officers and forty-six other ranks, making a grand total of twenty-three Officers and 410 other ranks.

On 17 April we marched to Woincourt to entrain for Ostreville, where training was carried on until 30 April. On 1 May we marched to Magnicourt and on 2 May to Bully-Grenay where we remained in Divisional reserve until the 13th when we went to Les Brebis. On the 18th we relieved the 8th Bn. Queen's in the line opposite Lens. On the 30th we were relieved by the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers and moved back to billets at Les Brebis. We remained in this sector until 30 September doing eight days in the line and eight days out. The first few weeks were a very anxious time as

the enemy was expected to attack at any moment and consequently defence schemes and extra working parties for the purpose of digging out and reconstructing old trenches were very numerous. Gas was used by us very frequently and there is little doubt that the enemy had many casualties from it. Patrols and raids were frequent not only in our sector, but along the whole line. (Map 36C.)

On 30 September we were relieved by 7th Bn. London Regiment and marched to Froissart camp where the night was spent and then entrained on 2 September for Ivergny. On the 3rd we marched from Ivergny to Bouquemaison and did three days' hard training. On the 6th we entrained at Bouquemaison for Hermies, where we detrained and marched to Graincourt and spent the night there in dug-outs and bivouacs. (Map 57C.)

On the evening of 7 September we marched to a new camp at Anneux where the night was spent. On the evening of the 8th we marched to the neighbourhood of Rumilly and spent the night in an old German trench. At about 10.00 hours on the 9th it was reported that the enemy had retired, so we marched to Niergnies and spent the night in a wood. During the night the wood was heavily shelled and we had one man killed and fifteen wounded. Early on the morning of 10 September we continued the advance, first across country and then along the Cambrai—St. Aubert road. During the evening a large number of enemy aeroplanes flew over the road but did no damage to our troops. At 18.45 hours the Battalion Commander was sent for to Brigade and received verbal instructions as to the attack for the next day, which was to start from Avesnes-lez-Aubert, and was to take St. Aubert



and push on to line of the railway east of river Selle. The conference lasted a considerable time, and Company commanders were not got together until well after 22.00 hours. Verbal instructions were immediately issued to Company commanders as to the objectives and method of attack. Written orders were issued later, but it was not possible to get these out until the actual hour for the start (i.e., 03.00 hours) had arrived, and no written orders were received from Brigade until the Battalion had actually formed up at the starting point. (Map 51A.)

On 11 September we paraded with the head of column on road at 03.00 hours. The night was very dark and there was considerable shelling to the north while we were marching to the assembly position. Nevertheless the assembly was carried out and the attack was commenced according to plan, with the exception that the actual start was about five minutes late. As, however, no concerted attack with troops on our right had been arranged, and as the Battalion on our left did not start until a great deal later, this did not make any difference. On emerging from Avesnes, the leading Companies came under heavy artillery and machine-gun fire, but advancing, they reached the houses to the west of St. Aubert, where hand-to-hand fighting took place. By this time they were suffering very severe casualties from machine-guns on the flanks, and they were forced to withdraw slightly and take up a line from the sunken road to railway. Here they held on all day under most trying circumstances, with no one on the flanks, and being shot at by observed machine-gun and artillery fire. Battalion Headquarters were established shortly after the advance in a house where an excellent view of

the battle could be obtained. Visual signalling was quickly established with the left front Company. At the start, no artillery assistance was available, and very little could be done to help the two leading Companies. At one time it was proposed to try and assist with an attack from the south, but as the Guards, who were on our right, were also held up, this was not considered practicable, and never took place. It is quite certain that had this attack been launched, heavy casualties would have resulted without any gain. As soon as dusk arrived, orders were issued to Companies to make new dispositions which were successfully accomplished. Our casualties for the day were—Killed: Two Officers and forty-eight other ranks. Wounded: Seven Officers, 126 other ranks. Missing: Three other ranks. Believed prisoners: Two men.

12th.—About 20.00 hours the Commanding Officer was sent for to Brigade Headquarters and was informed of the plan to be carried out the next day, by which the 8th Bn. Queen's were to seize the line of the Villers-St. Aubert railway under a creeping barrage, followed by one Company of the Battalion who were to take St. Aubert from the north. Zero hour was eventually fixed for this operation at 12.00 hours. This operation never took place, for at 08.00 hours, word was received that the enemy was retiring, and the Battalion proceeded to advance, "D" Company being on the right with "B" Company on the left. This advance was carried out extremely rapidly, "D" Company on the right pushing on at a great pace, taking two machine-guns and clearing the way for the advance of the troops on our right, who were some way behind. "D" Company reported that they had reached high ground west of Haussy at 11.40 hours. They stated that they were

not in touch with anyone on either flank, but "were having great fun," and that the "Hun was running." Battalion Headquarters were at this time established on railway, "A" and "C" Companies being in support just west of them. "A" Company was immediately ordered to move and gain touch with "D" Company and protect their right flank; one section of machine-guns were also sent with them. "A" Company carried out this order extremely well and were soon reported to be in touch with "D" Company. At the same time orderlies were sent forward to tell "B" Company to push on as quickly as possible and get into touch with "D" Company. It was known that "B" Company were in touch with the Fusiliers on our left. About 14.00 hours the Commanding Officer went forward to see the situation for himself and found that "B" Company had got too much to the left, and had taken up a position to the north instead of the south of the St. Aubert-Montrecourt road. This was soon remedied and at about 16.00 hours he returned to Battalion Headquarters, the situation then being that the Battalion was on its final objective west of the river Selle and was in touch on both flanks. During the night the 8th Bn. Queen's passed through the Battalion to force the crossing of the river Selle and to continue the advance. They reached the river Selle and though they succeeded in throwing one or two platoons across the river, they were not able to get over in force.

On the morning of the 13th the Battalion was relieved by 8th Bn. West Kent, and withdrew to Rieux, where they went into billets for rest and training. Our total casualties for the whole period were—Killed: Two Officers and fifty-four other ranks. Wounded:

Seven Officers and 157 other ranks. Missing: Three other ranks. Believed prisoners: Two men.

On the 16th we marched to billets in Cagnoncles, and on the following day 104 other ranks reinforcements joined the Battalion. On the 18th, Brigadier-General G. Thorpe, commanding the 17th Infantry Brigade inspected the Battalion and next day we marched to billets in Faubourg St. Druon (Cambrai). Training commenced on the 21st. On this day the Battalion String Band gave a concert at Cambrai, the first held in that City after its deliverance from German rule. (**Map 57B.**)

On 28 October we marched to new billets in Cagnoncles and later, to St. Aubert where training was again carried out. On 3 November we moved to Bernerain—the Brigade being in Divisional reserve. On 4 November we moved to a position outside Jenlain and were in reserve to the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers and 8th Bn. Queen's. On 5 November we went into billets in the neighbourhood of Le Bois Crette as the leading Battalions (1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers and 8th Bn. Queen's) were held up at St. Waast. During the next thirty-six hours it rained heavily and we were lucky enough to get all the men under cover. (**Map 51A.**)

Several times orders were received for the Battalion to move forward, but were cancelled before we got off. About 14.00 hours on 6 November verbal orders were received for the Battalion to move to Bernermeries and to attack St. Waast from the south. This also was cancelled and at 16.00 hours orders were received that we would attack the high ground north-east of St. Waast at dawn the following morning. Immediately on receipt of these orders the Commanding Officer and Company commanders went up to reconnoitre

the ground, but owing to the rain and dusk coming on rapidly, nothing could be seen. The enemy was shelling the road leading from where the Battalion was situated to St. Waast very heavily and was also searching for our guns. At 06.00 hours on 7 November the Battalion carried out the attack on St. Waast with a very heavy artillery barrage and by 09.00 hours the final objective had been reached with only one casualty. No enemy was encountered. The 72nd Infantry Brigade continued the advance and the Battalion went into billets about 14.00 hours at Bavai-Louvignies station. On the following day we went into the town of Bavai and billeted there. (Map 51.)

On 11 November orders were received that hostilities would cease. Our Division was not actually in the line at the time.

On 17 November the Battalion commenced the final march to billets at Chereng, half-way between Lille and Tournai, billeting on the way at Jenlain—Herain—Somain—Rumegies. (Maps 51A, 44, 37.)

The next five months were spent at Chereng. Demobilization swiftly depleted the Battalion. On 26 April 1919 the Battalion sailed from Antwerp for Tilbury, arriving at Winchester on the evening of Whit-Monday, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel E. R. Kewley.

Lieutenant-Colonel E. R. Kewley, D.S.O., M.C., and Captain L. Eastmead, M.C., were the only two Officers who sailed for France with the 3rd Battalion in 1914 and served continuously throughout the war with it.

---

## WAR-RECORD OF 4TH BATTALION. 1916.

1 January.—The 80th Infantry Brigade, consisting of the 2nd Battalion of the King's Shropshire Light Infantry, the 3rd and 4th Battalions of the King's Royal Rifle Corps and the 4th Bn. Rifle Brigade, under the command of Brigadier-General Smith, D.S.O., was in camp about five miles east of Salonika and was employed working on the Salonika defences.

On 12 January the Brigade started to move east to Stavros, one Battalion a day, and on the 14th marched to Hortackos, fifteen miles, where it was detained four days by heavy snow. On the 19th it moved to Gominie, seventeen miles, and on the following day to Pazarkia, ten miles, and on the 21st to Rendina Gorge near Stavros. Work was at once begun on a position extending from the Gulf of Orfano on the right to Beschik lake on the left, the Brigade relieving a Brigade of the 10th Division which had commenced operations, the Battalion taking over from a Battalion of the Royal Irish Rifles.

From 22 January to 1 August there was not much of interest to report. The Battalion prepared its section of the position for defence and a considerable amount of hard work was put in, digging trenches which, owing to rocks was a difficult job, making roads, etc., and training.

On 1 August the Brigade moved forward fifteen

miles to Chaiagahzi and took up a fresh position, the Battalion being on the right, at the mouth of the Struma.

On 31 August the Battalion Scouts under Lieutenant Millar, supporting a Yeomanry patrol came in touch with the Bulgars in the hills on the left bank of the Struma, our position being on the right bank.

On 4 September the Bulgars shelled the position and also the *Monitor* which was watching our right flank.

The force opposite us was composed of Turkish Infantry and Bulgar Artillery.

From September till the end of the year nothing of much note occurred, the Turkish position being shelled fairly continuously by our artillery and ships, and the enemy only occasionally replying.

Work was carried on on the trench-line by night. During the day the Battalion lived in a deep gorge in the hills some two miles in rear of the trenches which were on the flat about 500 yards from the river.

The Battalion suffered severely from malarial fever, and a considerable number of Officers and men were invalided with that disease.

---

## WAR-RECORD OF 4TH BATTALION. 1917.

1 January.—The 80th Brigade (consisting of the 2nd Bn. Shropshire Light Infantry, the 3rd and 4th Battalions of the King's Royal Rifle Corps and the 4th Battalion of the Rifle Brigade) was occupying the Neohori position at the mouth of the Struma. The Battalion had two Companies in front line, one in support and one in reserve; there was nothing of importance to record until May; the usual work on trenches, patrols across the Struma at night and training for Companies out of the line being the regular routine. Meanwhile airships and artillery continued their activity and the shelling of the enemy slowly but steadily increased.

25 May.—Orders were received for the Battalion, less two Companies, to proceed on special duty to Salonika. Companies to be 176 all ranks. "B" and "D" Companies were detailed for this duty, "A" and "C" to remain holding the Battalion sector of the line.

27 May.—The Battalion under the command of Major Moore-Gwyn left Tasli (the Brigade dump) for Salonika, proceeding by march route and motor lorry, arriving at Karaissi rest camp (Salonika) on the 28th.

From 28 May to 11 June Battalion training and route marching were carried out in the vicinity of Salonika and on the 12th the Battalion embarked under French arrangements on the Greek ship *Vasiliefs Constantine*, 700 Russians being also on board. The ship sailed on the 13th and arrived at the Piræus on the following day without incident, beyond various submarine alarms.



On arrival the Battalion was met by General Monterou (French Army) and Colonel Fairholme, British Military Attaché; the former informed the C.O. that the Battalion was to be attached to the French 30th Division commanded by General Castaign and that it was to occupy Fort St. Helias, about one mile from the quay and the Douane, one Company being accordingly sent to each place and dispositions for posts and patrols arranged for. The C.O. reported next day to General Regnault (the French C. in C.) who said he wished to inspect the British detachment on the 18th which he accordingly did, and expressed himself as much pleased with the bearing and drill of the men.

6 July.—Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. N. Gathorne-Hardy arrived from leave and resumed command of the Battalion. There is little to relate of the Battalion's tour of duty at Athens. The relations between the Allies and the Greeks improved gradually and the number of patrols and guards consequently decreased. Officers and other men were enabled to frequent Athens, and there was a considerable number of calls exchanged between the Allies, and entertainments organized.

18 July.—The Battalion entrained at Garde Roof for Salonika, proceeding in four trains at two hours' interval, the first train arrived there at 01.30 hours on the same date, and the Battalion marched to Karaissi camp.

22 July.—Inspected by the G.O.C. in C. and on the 23rd commenced our return march to the Struma. During this time the two Companies left behind ("A" and "C") under Major Kennett had continued to hold their sector of the Neohori position and had carried out the usual routine of work and patrols.

27 July.—The Battalion was once more concentrated on its old line, a portion of the Neohori bridge-head until now occupied by the 2nd Bn. Shropshire L.I. being taken over by the Battalion.

From August to December there was nothing to record.

---

## WAR-RECORD OF 4TH BATTALION. 1918.

January.—The Battalion exchanged positions with the 4th Bn. K.R.R.C. which meant moving from the extreme right to the extreme left of the position.

During March the position held by the Battalion was taken over by Battalions of the 5th and 15th Greek Regiments and the Battalion marched to Orliak into Corps reserve, and was employed on work on trenches, preparing summer camp, etc.

On 15 April the Battalion took part in a minor operation for advancing the line. Our casualties were :—

Killed.—Captain Millar, one W.O., six other ranks.

Wounded.—Lieutenants Read and Hannam, and eleven other ranks.

Lieutenant Read was subsequently strongly commended by the Bulgarians for his gallantry on this occasion.

Till the end of the month we were occupied finding working parties and patrols.

8 May. — Lieutenant-Colonel Railston assumed command of the Battalion *vice* Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. N. Gathorne-Hardy who embarked for France.

Nothing of importance occurred during May and June.

At the beginning of July a move was made to kilo. 71 Salonika-Seres road, and on the 5th the Battalion proceeded in motor lorries to Cuvesne and on the 6th, by train to Ravin Pactol and moved into a trench sector at Ravin-des-Poilus. It was relieved here by a Zouave Regiment on the 9th and went into Brigade reserve where it was subjected to a considerable amount of shelling. The Battalion also suffered severely this month from malaria, five Officers and 157 other ranks being admitted to hospital.

In August the Battalion was in the Raviné sector (W. of Vardar) and was employed in usual trench routine. The enemy shelling at this time was considerable. The Battalion carried out various successful raids. Two Officers and 129 other ranks were admitted to hospital during the month, mostly suffering from malaria.

5 September.—The 10th Bn. Hampshire Regiment and 2nd Bn. Gloucester Regiment (82nd Brigade) attacked through our sector, the objective being an enemy salient opposite "B" and "D" Companies of the Battalion. We furnished carrying parties; one of these was caught in the enemy barrage which came down after an attack had entered their trenches. All objectives were taken and held.

The Bulgar retreat now commenced along the whole line, the Allies advancing rapidly in pursuit, a day's advance being anything from six to ten miles. The enemy retreated in considerable confusion and abandoned large quantities of material.

28 September.—Representatives of the Bulgarian Government passed through our lines on their way to

General Milne's Headquarters and on the 30th a message was received stating that hostilities would cease at 12.00 hours.

Influenza raged in the Battalion as well as in the whole Brigade during this month and thirteen Officers and 334 other ranks were admitted to hospital; on the other hand the battle casualties were slight. Finally the 80th Brigade was reduced to one Regiment of three Companies of four platoons, Lieutenant-Colonel Railston commanding the Regiment and Major Kennett the Rifle Brigade Company.

During October, the move up country was continued and considerable hardships experienced, rations being short on most days, and only one blanket per man, although the weather was now very cold.

[*No record for November received.*].

16 December.—The Battalion under command of Major Kennett (Colonel Railston having gone on leave to England) having been reorganized and made up with men and material, embarked in H.M. Transport *Katoomba* for Batoum where it arrived on 23 December and went into camp to the south of the town, proceeding by train to Tiflis on the 30th.

The strength of the Battalion on the 30th was 21 Officers and 620 other ranks.

---

## THE WAR-RECORDS OF THE SERVICE BATTALIONS 1916-1918.

THE War-Records of the eight Service Battalions for the three years from 31 December 1915 to their demobilization in 1918-1919 have been prepared for publication in the CHRONICLE but it has been found absolutely impossible to include them in the present issue, owing to their number and consequent bulk.

The Records of the four Regular Battalions, as will be seen, already occupy some 200 pages whilst those of the Service Battalions, as at present arranged, would take up nearly double that space.

The Editor was further compelled to come to this decision, which he deeply regrets, owing to the present excessive cost of printing and publishing.

It is hoped that the complete Records of the Service Battalions up to the time of their final demobilization may be issued in the next volume of the CHRONICLE—that for 1920.

As readers of the CHRONICLE are aware, the War-Records of all the Service Battalions for the year 1915 were published in the last volume of the CHRONICLE issued (that for 1918).

Full particulars were also given of the casualties incurred by them and the reinforcements sent out to them during the years 1915, 1916, 1917 and 1918, as well as other information.

With a view, however, to make the Records of the Service Battalions as complete as possible, the Editor would be glad to receive any further information of their work, such as will be found in the "Letters," statistics, &c., dealing with the Regular Battalions in the present issue.

## LETTERS TO THE EDITOR.

---

IN previous issues of the *Chronicle* the "Battalion Letters to the Editor" have preceded the Annual "Records" since they dealt chiefly with the lighter side of Regimental life and were more adapted to the section devoted to Sports and Pastimes.

In the present issue however, since the War-Records of the Regular Battalions from the end of 1915 to Armistice Day, 11 November 1918, naturally occupy the first place in the volume, the Battalion Letters have been placed immediately *after* them so as to carry on the story of the services of these Battalions to 31 December 1919.

Owing to the extraordinary rapidity and complexity of the changes in each Battalion due to demobilization of Officers and men and to the subsequent re-creation of Battalions, the few attempts at annual Records for 1919 which have reached the Editor are of a most incomplete nature, but it is hoped that the present arrangement of Battalion Letters may suffice to carry on with all reasonable accuracy, if somewhat informally, the story of the life of the Regiment during the period when it was gradually reduced from a War-footing to a Peace-footing and re-created.

## 1ST BATTALION.

BAIJ,

MESOPOTAMIA.

31 December 1919.

DEAR EDITOR,

The Battalion Letter for the year 1919 will perforce be rather a disjointed affair, owing to the number of moves we have made and the changes that have taken place amongst us.

On 11 November 1918, Armistice Day, we were billeted at Curgies, a village some miles east of Valenciennes on the Valenciennes-Maubeuge road, and the beginning of the year 1919 found the Battalion still there.

On 4 January Major-General Sir A. Hunter-Weston paid an informal visit to the 11th Brigade and had a talk to those who had served under him when he was Brigadier in 1914. The following day the whole Brigade Group moved by lorry to the La Louviere area in Belgium. The Battalion was billeted in the mining village of Haine St. Paul about two miles out of La Louviere.

About this time, the competition for the best Company at Arms, started in 1918, was continued. Points were allotted for shooting, cross-country running, drill, route marching, and guard mounting. After a very close competition it was eventually won by "A" Company under Taylor, with "C" under Harvey a close second.

Education now became a regular part of our training, and under Lee the studious Rifleman prospered mightily.

Recreation grounds were hired from the Belgians, and an inter-platoon football competition was started. This competition lasted a month, No. 16 platoon coming out on top, beating No. 11 in the final round.

Shortly after this Major-General Tyndale-Lucas came to see us; he showed great interest in our educational work.

The Divisional cross-country race took place on 27 February, and roused great keenness. We were the first battalion home, but unfortunately, the Duke of Wellington's, which came second, lodged an objection for some obscure reason, and a board of Officers selected by the G.O.C. decided in their favour. Nevertheless, we had shown our running powers to the Division, and were well satisfied with ourselves.

During this month the inter-platoon drill and rifle shooting competition took place, being eventually won by No. 4 platoon, who thus became the "Champion Platoon." By the 22nd of the month our strength had fallen to 500 ranks, and companies were amalgamated, "A" and "I" forming "I" Company, and "B" and "C" forming "C" Company.

A short time after this Fellowes left us to go on leave prior to joining the Staff College.

On 1 March Regimental-Sergeant-Major Hanley and Company-Sergeant-Major Selway went off on twenty-eight days' leave, Company-Sergeant-Major Wyatt taking over the duties of Regimental-Sergeant-Major. Two drafts of two Officers and 100 other ranks left us to join the 16th and 25th Battalions of the K.R.R. Our strength was now so reduced that "C" and "I" Companies, together with Headquarters, joined together and formed the "Cadre Company."



On 24 March the Battalion moved to Binche, where the cadres of the Division were concentrated; the South Wales Borderers relieved us on the 29th, and on 20 April the cadre left for Dunkirk, we crossed to Dover on the 23rd and entrained for Aldershot. The band of the 4th Battalion met us, and we marched up to Oudenarde Barracks.

By degrees men came to us and the Battalion was reformed. Colonel Paley took over command on 30 April, and shortly after we started a perfect orgie of leave.

Regimental-Sergeant-Major Scrase came to us and took over the duties of Regimental-Sergeant-Major Hanley who left us about the end of July.

Early in July, Fellowes and Brierly took a party from the Battalion to Paris for the Victory March. Williams joined on 9 July and took over the duties of Adjutant.

On 18 July Norcott, Corporal Andrews and a party went up from Aldershot to London to take part in the Victory March through London. On the following day Fellowes and Brierly came back from Paris with their detachment in time to march with representative "Colour parties" on the same date, needless to say without our "Colours."

During this time we had to send a few officers to London to help the Americans to "sight-see." This enviable task was given to Warren, Short, and Ravn. These three, from what we afterwards heard, did full justice to their job; they returned to us shortly after, blown out with State dinners and civic welcomes.

On 22 July a Guard of Honour of three Officers, four Sergeants and 100 rank and file, and the Bands and Buglers drawn from all four Rifle Battalions at Aldershot

(3rd and 4th Battalions 60th, and 1st and 4th Battalions R.B.) took part in the 60th and Rifle Brigade Memorial Service at Westminster Abbey. The guard was particularly smart and well drilled, and did credit to the Officers who had taken so much trouble over its training.

Graham commanded the guard which was inspected by H.R.H. the Colonel-in-Chief. The service itself was a very fitting Memorial to all those gallant brother Riflemen whom we have lost in the war.

During August Corporal Andrews and a party of Riflemen from the 1st and 4th Battalions left us as a specially selected personal guard to General Sir Henry Rawlinson in Russia.

On 13 August H.R.H. the Colonel-in-Chief paid us and the 4th Battalion a visit, and the Officers of the two Battalions had the honour of being photographed with him on the 14th.

Up to the end of August we had been expecting to sail for India in October; orders however reached us cancelling this, and warning us for Mesopotamia in a fortnight's time. This led to great consternation, and until the time of embarkation life was one continual rush of leave and efforts to collect suitable kit, nobody knowing what to take and what to leave. Eventually, on the night of 14 September, everything was packed up and we were ready to move.

We left Aldershot in the early dawn of 15 September, going through to Tilbury in two trains. General Sir Archibald Murray and General Butler came down to the station at Aldershot to see us off. At Tilbury we met Kewley and Savill who had worked wonders for us as advanced party.

Owing to the suddenness of our move, many old Riflemen who would have come down to see us off

were unable to do so. We, however, had several telegrams from these wishing us "God-speed." Colonel Norcott managed to get down and see us on board before we sailed. Our ship, the S.S. *Karoa* called at Gibraltar, Malta and Port Said; some of us got ashore at these places for a short time. We reached Bombay on 5 October and went on board the *Swakopmund* at once, sailing that night for Basrah. Curiously enough the captain of this ship was on board the H.T. *German* which took the Battalion out to the South African War. The *Swakopmund* was a German passenger ship, and later, was burnt in the London Docks. We reached Basrah on the 13th, having changed to the *Vita* in order to get across the bar. The Battalion having disembarked, we marched up to Makina that night, where we went into camp.

During the voyage out, we had several boxing competitions and sports, which were a great success. A swimming bath was rigged up on board, and was a great boon to the men, who spent most of the day in it.

Mr. Barry and Sergeant Dennis worked wonders with the string band, so that the men had two dances a week after sundown. Their evening dress consisted of such articles of apparel as bathing dresses, or at any rate very little more, but nevertheless, these dances were a great success.

The Officers had a fancy dress dance, which was the cause of much mirth. Ayers was a tremendous success as a Babu, till he came to pieces, and had to be forcibly ejected from our midst. Knowles as a parson was perfect.

We spent a week in camp at Makina, and then moved up the Tigris to Bagdad by barge, which we reached on 31 October. It was very hot all the way

up, and we were thankful to get ashore occasionally in the evening, when we tied up to the bank. On the way up river we touched at Amarah and Kut.

We left Bagdad on the night of the 31st and reached our destination, Baiji, on 1 November, and went into camp. We are on the banks of the Tigris amongst the Shoriamiah Islands, close to Fathah where the Turk made almost his last stand before the Armistice. Dust storms and sand-fly are to be our worst enemies we hear, but we shall escape these trials till next summer. We amuse ourselves shooting and attempting to play polo, all of us, with the exception of the Colonel, being beginners.

Christmas is just over and we are settling down again to a normal existence.

On Boxing Day we had a Sports' meeting and a Fair, the latter a most successful show run by Osbaldeston, who in the capacity of Showman completely surpassed himself. He was assisted by the greater part of the comic element of the Battalion.

The mule Grand Military Steeplechase led to much mirth, and was won by Corporal Horner. For some time it was doubtful if any would complete the course, the water jump—the last fence—holding up all comers for several minutes. However, the crowd assisted mules and jockeys over by main force, and all was well. The pony scurry was won by Kewley, with Norcott second and the Colonel third.

This ends our news for the year, so with good wishes to all Riflemen,

We remain,

Yours ever,

1 B. R.B.

---

## 2ND BATTALION.

ALDERSHOT.

31 December 1919.

DEAR EDITOR,

On 9 November 1918, we marched from Cattelet to St. Amand where we billeted for the night, continuing our march, as Reserve Brigade, to Pommeroeul on the 10th. It was a long march of eighteen miles over very bad roads which had been blown up at almost every crossing by the Boche in his retreat; however the men and horses stuck it well and thanks to the Band we had a tremendous reception from the Belgian inhabitants as we passed through the different villages.

At 10.30 a.m. on the 11th we got the news that the Armistice was to begin at 11 a.m. That evening the Band played in the village and the local *Maire* and family came to dinner to celebrate the occasion. The following day we moved by route march to Baudour preparatory to advancing with the remainder of the 8th Division into Germany. On the 16th we were moved by lorries to Esplechin, about eight kilometres west of Tournai; there we only stayed one night, moving on the following day to better billets in Rumes, where we remained till 16 December—our move into Germany having been cancelled.

During that time we carried out a certain amount of training but demobilization began to work havoc amongst us and made continuous training difficult. We played the 2nd Bn. Royal Berkshire Regiment at football and lost, after a good game, by 2 goals to 1;

two or three mounted paper-chases were indulged in and afforded amusement and exercise for most of us ; others played hockey and Rugby football, and the evenings passed with concerts and the Divisional cinema.

On 7 December His Majesty the King visited Tournai and we marched into the Plains d'Exercice where we formed up with the rest of the Division ; during our march to the parade ground we successfully overcame all other musical opposition thanks to Company Quartermaster-Sergeant Thurgood with the Band and Bugles. The King arrived at 12 noon and we lined the streets and later, marched back to Rumes.

Aldridge with the " 1914 " members of the Battalion formed a Guard of Honour in the Square and was inspected by the King.

We had arranged to meet the 3rd Battalion who were at Cheraing, east of Lille, at a place half-way between our two villages, on the 13 December, have our dinners and then play a football match between the two Battalions ; but the weather unfortunately turned out so bad that we had to cancel the arrangements and we never got another opportunity for the Battalions to meet. However Kewley, Wilbraham, Eastmead and several other Officers, N.C.O.s and men came over to see us and we used to go over to them. Roger Brand rode over one day too, with some of us, to the 3rd Battalion.

On 15 December we played the 1/7 Durham L.I. in the Divisional Football League at Tournai and lost, after a very good game, by 3 goals to 2 : the same day we won a friendly hockey match against Brigade Headquarters.

On the 16th we started our three days' march to

Enghien ; the night of the 16th-17th we spent at Barry : the night of the 17th-18th at Ath ; and the following day arrived at Enghien and were billeted with the 2nd Bn. Royal Berkshire Regiment in the College des Augustins. Salmon took over the Battalion on the 20th, and Eastwood went off to command the 12th Battalion at Bus les Artois.

On Christmas Day Roger Brand, who was our General, went round Dinners and got a great reception from the men, and the time-honoured match was played between the Officers and the Sergeants in the afternoon, and the Sergeants walked home by 10 goals to 1. On the 26th we had a fancy dress dance in the evening and it proved a great success. On the 27th we beat the 1st Bn. Worcester in the third series of the Divisional League by 2 goals to nil.

January 1919 was spent in Company training with such men as were left, and whist-drives, dances, and the Band afforded recreation in the evenings. A party of Riflemen were sent by omnibus to Mons on the 18th. Taylor and West and Regimental-Sergeant-Major Doulton and Company-Sergeant-Major Fry were very prominent in their efforts to afford entertainment and amusements for the men, and the success of the concerts, whist-drives, etc., was very largely due to their efforts.

On 24 January the Battalion marched from Enghien with the remainder of the Division, to take part in the review at Brussels by the King of the Belgians, and was billeted at Lennick St. Martin for the night, marching on into Brussels on the 25th.

On the 26th the King of the Belgians reviewed the troops and the Battalion marched past ; after the ceremony the men were given twenty-four hours' leave ;

it was very cold with snow. We left Brussels on the 27th, getting back to Enghien on the 29th. A very nice complimentary Order was sent out to the IIIrd Corps from the King of the Belgians in connection with the parade.

February found us still at Enghien with demobilization in full swing; time hung rather heavily on everyone's hands but we did our best to make things pleasant, with dances, concerts, etc. Mr. Young with four bandsmen and nineteen boys joined from the Reserve Battalion on the 12th and so we were able to get a full band started again which added very considerably to everyone's pleasure. Salmon was away on leave and Taylor took over the Battalion till the 17th when he went sick and Squire took his place; Eastwood returned from the 12th Battalion on 7 March and took over the Battalion again.

Alldrige, West, McLean, Fulford, Cosby and Fyers with nineteen of the Band boys visited Waterloo and saw where we had fought as a Battalion in 1815. Several drafts of Officers and men were sent off during this time to the 25th Bn. K.R.R.C.

In the six-a-side football competition in the Division we finished up second and only three points behind the winners.

On 17 March we proceeded by route march to Ath, where we were billeted in the barracks. There we remained till we left for England in the end of June. As the strength of the Battalion dwindled it became in proportion much harder to keep everyone interested and keen, and the general smooth running was not assisted by the numerous changes in the orders for cadres and retainable and releasable men. However, all, without exception, played up splendidly and the



Battalion kept its good name to the very end. We had two photographs taken—one of the cadre and Band and the other of Alldridge and the ten original members still with us of the 2nd Battalion who had sailed with it for France in November 1914. This got into the *Tatler* as the “sole survivors of the original 2nd Battalion” which naturally caused a certain amount of indignation amongst the many surviving original 1914 2nd Battalion people.

We saw a certain amount of the 3rd Battalion and they were, like us, kicking their heels at Cheraing waiting to go home. Roger Brand left us in May to go and command a Battalion on the Rhine and we were very sorry to lose him as our General. Parties were organized under West and Fulford to visit Ypres and Passchendaele, and several relics in steel helmets, etc., were found on the battlefield of our attack in 1917. The Band gave some very excellent concerts which were thoroughly appreciated by both ourselves and the civilians.

It was with considerable envy that we saw other Battalions leaving for England each week and eventually it was only after we had “played off” every other Battalion in the Division that we finally got away ourselves, and then only in two bits—Eastwood with the cadre going to Boulogne and Alldridge with the stores and Transport by Antwerp. There is a dark story that the reason that we were left so late was that the Demobilization Officer of No. 5 Group thought we were Artillery because of “Brigade”! Anyway, that seemed the only reason for holding us back and sending us home with the Artillery. So it was with my great thankfulness that we marched up to the Dépôt, Winchester, at 2 a.m. on 17 June, and were

met by Henniker and West. Everyone at the Dépôt gave us a magnificent reception and were kindness itself to us. A few days later we all went away on leave and the old 2nd Battalion ceased to exist, only to be re-born at a later date.

---

It is no easy matter to describe the re-forming of the 2nd Battalion, such a series of pictures does it present, all different and yet all succeeding one another in rapid succession and thus blending into one continuous picture of progress from a disbanded cadre and a pile of baggage at the Dépôt to a Battalion, far from complete it is true, but a Battalion all the same, with the spirit we all hope and trust of the old 2nd Battalion.

During the process of evolution certain figures appear more prominently than others, some for only part of the time, some for the whole time, and all playing their particular rôle in the scene. There is Colonel Farmer with Anderson as Adjutant directing and supervising, there is Alldridge, the veteran Quartermaster, performing not only the herculean task of reproducing the order and exactitude of peace from the chaos left by war, but also the even more valuable function of bringing with him across the bridge with the past all the spirit and traditions which are so near and dear to us. At the beginning we see Lane creating interior economy, then Churcher bringing back the Musketry spirit, Hanley, the Regimental-Sergeant-Major, with an excellent team of W.O.s and N.C.O.s re-forming that absolutely invaluable stratum of N.C.O.s. Then appear Murray and Halloran re-establishing smartness and alertness by means of physical training and drill; and through it all we see

the Company Commanders and other older hands instructing and setting an example to the younger ones, until everywhere the old tone is being recreated.

With the Riflemen the picture is always changing. At first we see a Battalion of New Army men gradually dwindling and finally going off, leaving a nucleus of very young, partly-trained recruits with everything to learn, yet taking in hand all the duties of a Battalion, and providing Officers' servants, mess, police, sanitation, guards, etc. This lot of men is gradually replaced by others who meanwhile have been partly trained, in turn to be replaced by more, so that by degrees the whole advance in training and efficiency.

Let us give some illustrations to show how we stood in earlier days. The men owing to their extreme youth, referred to one another as "Boy," "Please, Sir, the other boy did it." When the move to Aldershot took place, the W.O.s and N.C.O.s took off their coats and loaded the heavy baggage; for the men could not lift the heavy packages. On arrival Alldridge and Lane swept out the Transport lines. Five days after our arrival it was found that the men were afraid to use the Recreation Room because with so much silver about (the Shields were out) they thought it could not be meant for them! At 2 p.m. (or 14.00 hours as we now call it) to-morrow's guard could be seen learning to present arms.

Meanwhile recruits had been gradually arriving from the Depôt and what was of the greatest help, some older men. With the best of food, thanks to Savill (the messing Officer) and to the Master Cook, Sergeant Shadbolt, the recruits grew visibly; and with football, boxing, running and hockey, in which Stevens' enthusiasm and the good work of such people as

Sergeants-Major Hill and Bingham, Company-Quarter-master-Sergeant Thurgood, Sergeant Kempton, Corporal Chesney and many others, combined with the drill, physical training, etc., they improved out of all recognition and though training has never got off the square, the Battalion soon secured a good name with the Staff and the A.P.M. and was able to turn out and undergo an inspection by the G.O.C., with every credit.

Now let us try and describe how this Phoenix emerged from the ashes of the old one which had flown from India to France and had been consumed in the furnace of war. After a brief spell at the Dépôt, we were ordered to Rugeley Camp on Cannock Chase. Now Rugeley has its bad points. In July it is as cold as it is in other places in March. It consists of condemned huts with no conveniences except to let the wind and rain into their interiors. It affords no accommodation for married people. But its drawbacks taken together constitute its one advantage, namely, it has no distracting influences. To this spot then, at the end of July, the embryo 2nd Battalion repaired and proceeded to re-form. Now the Reserve Battalion lived in ordinary-sized huts and in one of these a staff of W.A.A.C.s provided food for the 100 odd Officers on the books, of whom sufficient were present to fill all the available space, but nothing daunted, they most hospitably took in the 2nd Battalion also.

The big event took place on 10 August when half the Reserve Battalion (some 500 strong) with some very good transport, thanks to Hill and Sergeant Frewin, picked up their packs, marched across the Square and became the 2nd Battalion, whilst the remaining half picked up their packs, sat down again and waited to become the 3rd Battalion. The next

morning the clerk at the Brigade Office rang up to ask why the weekly strength return of the Reserve Battalion was overdue! The 2nd Battalion was now a fairly solid affair, but it contained much demobilizable personnel. While this slowly dwindled and finally disappeared altogether, recruits in small numbers, untrained and of small stature and age, came in from the Dépôt. However things went well, as Lane and Reeve and a small number of old hands of all ranks such as the C.S.M.s of Companies, Fry, Bradley, Wood and Hall, got a very good move on, but we always had a serious shortage of old N.C.O.s and old Riflemen.

On 25 August the Regimental Birthday came and went with customary honours.

The Battalion was already beginning to catch the eye of the Brigade Staff, when the regrettable railway strike came upon us. After two sleepless days and nights the Battalion was made up with two Companies from the 3rd Battalion and proceeded in the early dawn by lorry to Birmingham for its first campaign. At Birmingham it took up its abode in the Bingley Hall (an Agricultural Show building). The Officers occupied the Bar, decorated by lists of pre-war wines at pre-war prices and notices of the sporting events of 1914. The men swept out and then occupied the gallery. The transport and cooks occupied the floor and filled the building with a strong solution of black smoke and brown dust until we brought in a water-cart and took some panes out of the skylights. The Battalion settled down like veterans except that a cask of beer was introduced by the P.R.I. unwelcomed; whilst the Riflemen went on quarter-hour passes to buy buns and cakes.

The Battalion met with the complete approval of

the authorities and inhabitants of Birmingham, who were all very kind to us, and after a week's stay, it, and one of its Companies (one from the 3rd Battalion) detached to Coventry, returned to Rugeley by train to freeze again in huts.

At the end of October a crisis occurred. All the demobilizable personnel went, leaving us only with recruits and orders to proceed to Aldershot.

Our early move to Aldershot was due to the impending visit of the Shah to that place, and as one good turn deserves another it was with the best will in the world that we fell in for our first review, and did a creditable march past the Shah in fours. As we have no other kit as yet we paraded in khaki and tin hats and made quite a good show, thanks to the efforts of Sergeant Reynolds, the Master Tailor, and Sergeant Morrison, the Shoemaker Sergeant.

Our stay at Aldershot has not been full of incident but a period of steady progress punctuated by an inspection by the G.O.C., and by a visit from the Adjutant-General, who was inspecting the present class of recruit with a view to trying to eliminate the very young, and any possible undesirables. We also passed—luckily in ignorance—through a crisis; we were very nearly being sent to Egypt or Germany to uphold the honour of the Nation.

Christmas was kept by sending off Xmas cards and a huge leave party. Those who remained had a most sumptuous feast and there was a very successful Xmas tree for the children. The success of the latter was due to the efforts of Gathorne-Hardy with the invaluable help of Company-Sergeant-Major Hilliard as an organiser and Company-Sergeant-Major Fry as Father Xmas.

The close of the year has been marked by the reintroduction of the String Band, thanks to the efforts of Mr. Young and Company-Quartermaster-Sergeant Thurgood, and the Buglers have made steady progress under Sergeant Whiting.

We should like to conclude with a slight sketch of how we now stand. To start with the Officers' Mess: We have a very large number of Officers, some fifty on paper strength, of whom over thirty belong to us and are really with us. Of the pre-war ones, the Colonel, Lane and Alldridge have been with us all along. Gathorne-Hardy, and Riley, joined us at Rugeley; whilst Bernard, Liddell, Richardson, Constable, Earle, Pelham-Burn, Horton and McGrigor all joined us at Aldershot. Of the others who have come since the beginning of the War, many began their service in the ranks; amongst these we number such experienced N.C.O.s as Halloran, Churcher, Murray, Curtis, etc., not to mention Breckon and Traylen who came from Cavalry regiments. They have made themselves invaluable in the Battalion.

The Mess itself is not a Ritz, although it is immensely improved from its first efforts. However, in spite of there being no plate and no pictures, all of which are being done up after their tour of foreign service and the five years of war, the Mess is now fit to live in and will soon we hope resume its former glories.

The Sergeants' Mess has settled down more quickly and its quite like old times except indeed that there are no Sergeants—at least very few. The same may be said for the Corporals' room though this has become a considerable improvement on pre-war times and has progressed concurrently with the Canteen which is now run by the N.A.C.B. Here it should be mentioned

that the "wet" canteen is almost a thing of the past. On being questioned the other day, the attendant at this institution (which we share with a Battalion of the 60th) said he had had a fair morning and had served six drinks. The N.C.O. on duty there is not a busy man as is undoubtedly the Lady who sells buns in the Regimental Institute.

With all good wishes to all Riflemen,

We remain,

Ever yours,

2 B. R.B.

---



## 3RD BATTALION.

CAMBRIDGE BARRACKS,  
PORTSMOUTH.

31 December 1919.

DEAR EDITOR,

Since you received the last Letter from this Battalion in 1913, much has been done in piecing together the varied history of the Regiment, but since 11 November, 1918 saw the conclusion of the War, we will take up the thread of the 3rd Battalion's story from that date. Between that day and the end of 1919, the transformation of the Battalion from a War to a Peace unit took place: the first half year being spent in taking leave of those who had joined us for the War; whilst the second half was occupied in re-forming the Battalion from new recruits, with a leaven of re-enlisted men and the old soldiers who had joined the Regiment before the War many of whom had been with the Battalion at Cork.

We were at Bavai on Armistice day, in reserve, and had been just issued with the new maps of Namur, ready for the next show. It was really very hard to realize that the War was over; it seemed that one had to start looking at things from an entirely different point of view, and when there was no more object in practising attacks there was really very little left to do. . . . .

Bavai was a very interesting place, and all day long French families who had been hurriedly evacuated by the Boche were being passed through back to their

homes and collected into different parties in the Grande Place just outside the barracks where the Battalion was billeted. General Thorpe left the 17th Brigade about three days after the Armistice, and Kewley took over the Brigade Command for the time, and Lagden the Battalion. On the 19th we discovered that we were not to form part of the Army of the Rhine, but were to rejoin the 1st Army, which was to be quartered in a back area and demobilized, and accordingly we marched that day to billets at Jenlain, a village on the road to Valenciennes. There we found that the 1st Battalion were in Curgies, the next village. Letts, who was in command of it, as Liddell was on leave, and the Adjutant (Charles Naumann), came over and arranged for us to be well received when we marched through the village next day. The Battalions had not met like this since 1914 when on the Aisne and a very hearty welcome awaited us. We hope it is not unkind to say how pleased the 1st Battalion were to see that their Sergeants were wearing gold-and-black stripes, which ours were not and also were the possessors of sixteen Buglers with which to play us through the streets.

That night found us at Somain, between Valenciennes and Denain, where we stayed about ten days, which were spent in the all-important business of recreation and where also we tasted the first-fruits of demobilization and the Army Education scheme. The coal miners and other highly pivotal personages sailed for England, and the remainder wished that they had known enough to put themselves down as coal miners when their trade groups had been taken. Sly took over command of "C" Company from Bridgeman, who went to the 17th Brigade as Education Officer.

On 30 November the Battalion marched to Rumesies, on the Belgian border, where it lay for a day or two waiting for the 8th Division to move from our final area, between Lille and Tournay. This was reached on 2 December, the Battalion being billeted in Cheraing and Gruson, which formed one large village on the main road from Lille to Tournay. Here Kewley resumed command of the Battalion as General Thorpe had returned to the Brigade.

The Battalion settled down in good time for Christmas, when "C" Company, now under the command of Kemp, took first prize for the best decorated rooms.

On the whole, time passed merrily at Cheraing; school in the morning, football in the afternoon and other amusements in the evening were the order of the day. The Battalion String Band (the hire of which was eagerly sought at fifty francs a time) did no little to contribute to the enjoyment of the Christmas season and encourage the Riflemen to tread joyous measures with Madame and Mademoiselle at frequent intervals in the Gymnasium (which had been fitted up by Fry). And all this time "slip" men were following "pivotal," and 1915 men those of 1914, in the jubilant procession home. In March the Band boys were brought out from Winchester under Mr. Stevens and were taken on personally conducted trips by Kewley and Wilbraham to the Ypres salient and other "places of interest" not unknown to older men of the Battalion,

Demobilization played havoc with the arrangements for Sports, but at the start "B" Company carried all before them at hockey and football. One Rugger match was played against the 8th Bn. Queens', who beat us by three points. By April the Battalion was

pretty well reduced to a cadre, the only Officers remaining being Kewley, Wilbraham, Birch and Eastmead, who has the distinction of being the only Officer of the Battalion who went to the War with it, and came back with it, without having *left it for a single day*, except for the usual and well-deserved leaves which even he found necessary at times. At one time Kewley found himself in command of the cadre of the 24th Division and of the Divisional Commander's car, which came in very handy for trips to places which the Battalion had never been to. They went to Givet and Dinant, to Cologne, and to Ostend and Zeebrugge. In those days the anti-waste fiends could still find it in their stony hearts, to forgive the Army a few sins.

The Battalion won the football competition for the 24th Divisional cadre, beating the 24th Machine Gun Battalion in the final by four points to two.

About April, with the first swallows, came the first rumours of a move home, or at any rate from Cheraing. Cork, Scotland, Ireland, Malta, etc., every place (except Portsmouth) being mentioned on the highest authority. On 12 May all the equipment was packed up and taken to Baisieux station, only to be unpacked again and brought back to Cheraing, where the Battalion hid its chagrin by an Aquatic Sports meeting on the 13th. On 30 May came orders to pack up again, and 1 June saw us leave the village for good and all, and Monsieur and Madame and Mademoiselle and the *petits* who had danced on the lawn of the Château to the tune of Percy Fletcher's "Three Light Pieces" were all there to say good-bye as we marched away to the tune of "Ninety-Five."

The train took us through Tournai and Brussels to Antwerp, where we billeted on the quay and next day

embarked on the S.S. *Sicilian*, with the 1st Bn. Royal Fusiliers and the 1st Bn. North Stafford, the whole of the staff of the ship being found from the Battalion. Twenty-three of the cadre were men who had left Cork with the Battalion in 1914. A very smooth passage brought us on 5 June to the Nore, where we anchored off Sheerness, so full of pleasant memories, and on 7 June we disembarked at Tilbury where the Band left us to proceed direct to Winchester. The cadre, to universal disgust, was sent to Prees Heath, where it arrived on 8 June, unwelcomed and unsung. On 9 June which was Whit-Monday, we took the train again for Winchester, where the reverse was the case. The Band arrived at the station a full hour too early, and played with unexampled vigour to an admiring Bank Holiday crowd, till the news came that the train was late and that the cadre would arrive in some hours' time. The full musical programme was then repeated again and Lord Henniker and many other old Riflemen were waiting to welcome us back. On 12 June the cadre was inspected by General Harper, G.O.C. Southern Command, in whom the Battalion saw an old friend and former Brigade Commander in 1915. He arrived early on the parade ground, before anyone was ready and Eastmead had to double on to parade. Old Riflemen, who take note of such things, aver that twenty-eight years had elapsed since such a phenomenon was last observed in the case of a Quartermaster.

On 17 June the Battalion was dispersed; every Officer, N.C.O. and Rifleman went on leave and was struck off the strength of the Battalion with the single exception of Wilbraham and Orderly-Room-Sergeant Aston, who alone of the Battalion remained "on the strength"! On 16 July the Battalion was reformed

at Winchester, the early work being carried out under the command of Marshall, who had left Cork with the Battalion as Regimental-Quartermaster-Sergeant. Kewley, who had commanded since June, 1917, did not rejoin, but was posted to the 1st Battalion, and Colonel Harington, now the permanent Commanding Officer, assumed command, paying his first visit to the Battalion as such on 28 July.

On 5 August there came orders to proceed to Rugeley and link up with the Reserve Battalion, and there, on 16 August, we took over half of their numbers, the remainder being posted to the 2nd Battalion. Still the task of reforming a peace-time unit lay for the greater part ahead. Officers and men alike were continually changing, many were still serving with the Battalion who were due to be demobilized, recruits had to be absorbed and trained, and a draft found for the 10th London Regiment in the Army of Occupation in Egypt.

Wilbraham carried on as Adjutant, and the Company Commanders for the time being were Marshall, "A," Foljambe, "B," Moore-Gwyn, "C," and Edwards, "D."

In the matter of Sports, the Battalion had a most successful time at Rugeley; both at football and hockey they had an almost unbroken record of successes. On the Regimental Birthday the usual sports were held, and the Athletic shield won by "A" Company, after a hard struggle with "D"—a noteworthy performance as "A" Company had the largest proportion of recruits.

At the end of September came the Railway Strike, as a result of which "A" and "D" Companies were sent on strike duty, "D" Company under Foljambe to Coventry, and "A" Company under Marshall with the 2nd Battalion to Birmingham. The Companies per-

formed their distasteful task without incident, and were fortunate, especially at Coventry, in being able to preserve friendly, if firm relations with the civilian population.

On 12 November the Battalion (which had sent an advance party under Smith some six weeks before) moved to Cambridge Barracks, Portsmouth, which was to be our permanent station. Little remained of the year 1919, and that little was well employed in reviving the good old English custom of winter leave, which was kept up with great enthusiasm by all ranks.

On 1 December the Prince of Wales paid a visit to Portsmouth on his return from his American Tour, and among the troops furnished as Guards of Honour, the Battalion was represented by a party 100 strong under Massy-Beresford with Coghill and Jackson. In the Army Football Cup the Battalion drew a bye in the first round, and in the second met the 4th Motor Transport Company R.A.S.C. at Winchester, beating them by 4—3. Unfortunately after eleven days the Motor Transport raised an objection, and the Army Football Association directed a re-play at Portsmouth which resulted in a draw, and a third match resulted in the defeat of the Battalion by two goals to one. We arrived too late at Portsmouth to enter for any other events. The Winter leave which we have already mentioned made Christmas here a quiet affair, but since then, quite a lot has happened to provide material for our next letter.

Meanwhile we can only feel grateful that the events of the year 1919 have been such that we are still able to send our best wishes to all other Riflemen, and to sign ourselves,

Yours ever,  
3 B. R.B.

## 4TH BATTALION.

QUETTA.

31 December 1919.

DEAR EDITOR,

The Battalion left the British Salonica Force on 16 December 1918, for the Transcaucasia, under the command of Captain (Acting-Major) W. H. Kennett, M.C., and eventually became part of the Army of the Black Sea. "A" Company under the command of Captain G. H. Huyshe-Eliot and Headquarters were stationed at Kars. "B" Company under the command of Acting-Captain V. C. Witham, M.C., 8th (S) Bn. East Lancashire Regiment, were on detachment by platoons. "C" Company under the command of Captain A. S. G. Douglas were stationed at Elaverdi. "D" Company under Captain H. M. Ramsay Fairfax-Lucy, were also on detachment by platoons.

The whole Battalion thus situated was employed on guarding arms, ammunition, grain, etc., from the Turks. Whilst stationed in the Transcaucasia Lieutenant C. E. Temperly, M.C., was appointed Military Governor of Kars and district with the local rank of Lieutenant-Colonel, and Captain A. S. G. Douglas was appointed Military Governor of the neutral zone of the Borchalo province with the temporary rank of Major.

On 17 June 1919, the Battalion, reduced to cadre strength left the Army of the Black Sea for England, under the command of Lieutenant (Acting-Major) C. E. Temperly, O.B.E., M.C., with Lieutenant (Acting-Captain) H. Coghill as Adjutant, arriving home on



1 July 1919. The only personnel that came home with the cadre who had accompanied the Battalion from India in October 1914 and to France in December 1914 were Lieutenants G. F. Newsom and T. G. Bonnick, Quartermaster-Sergeant (O.R.S.) G. Holdstock, Company-Sergeants-Major J. Miller and J. Wood, and Corporal H. Larcombe.

Drafts had been collecting at Ramillies Barracks, Aldershot, since April, and by 1 July, when the cadre returned, they were about 600 strong under command of Colonel Salmon with Hoskyns as Adjutant and a fair proportion of pre-war N.C.O.s. The period at Aldershot was occupied chiefly by going on furlough. There was week-end furlough, embarkation furlough, and two distinct and different Peace-festival holidays, so nothing at all satisfactory was possible in the way of training. The week-end furloughs were very liberal, for owing to the fear of crowding the railways, the men had to travel on Fridays and could not return until Tuesdays. This gave us just two days a week in which we had all the men together. Wednesday was usually a Commanding Officer's parade and Thursday was pay-day, prior to starting off on furlough again on Friday.

While at Aldershot we made great use of the Aldershot Club where most of us played cricket and tennis. The subalterns managed to figure a good deal during the season in town.

The Japanese Mission consisting of five senior Officers of all branches of the Japanese Army visited Aldershot under the able leadership of Baird who brought them to dine one night, when we initiated them into the mysteries of cock-fighting, wrestling on horseback and "Are you there"? This they greatly appreciated and presented us with a Japanese silk picture in memory of their visit.

September saw us all on final leave—three weeks ; we went half at a time.

On 15 September Crosbie and Baird, after innumerable orders and counter-orders, embarked at Liverpool for India with twenty other ranks as Advance party.

The end of September brought the railway strike. Costobadie and fifty-one men volunteered for railway work, Costobadie driving an engine over which he had a few minor troubles, such as over-running Leicester Station by a mile and then backing through it another mile too far. However his passengers appeared to have greatly appreciated his efforts, as one old lady presented him with half-a-crown. Of course a good many people suffered much inconvenience in returning from leave and the determination of some of the men to return as near the expiration of their furlough as possible was most praiseworthy, one man making his way back from Norfolk by walking and “lorry-hopping ;” another bicycling from Eastbourne.

Just before embarkation, on 25 September, the Colonel-in-Chief came down to Aldershot to inspect us ; this was also Colonel Salmon’s last parade as Commanding Officer. Colonel Seymour came down with His Royal Highness. The Battalion looked well but very young, quite 50 per cent. not having been in the War at all.

On 27 September Colonel Seymour took over command, but we were not to lose Colonel Salmon who took over command of the North Camp Infantry Brigade to which we belonged.

On 20 October we embarked at Tilbury on the Hired Transport, *Soudan*, leaving all the wives and families behind us.

We had a very comfortable trip, sharing the ship

with two companies of the 1st Bn. Worcestershire Regiment. Four days out from Bombay the ship was directed by wireless to Karachi which set us all wondering as to what our destination was to be, as we had previously heard officially that it was Belgaum. On 13 November we landed at Karachi where we were met by Baird, who broke it to us as nicely as he could, that we were for Quetta and that the Advance party were up there taking over. On 15 November the Colonel, Band, "B" and "C" Companies entrained for Quetta where we arrived on the 16th about eight in the evening. During the thirty-four hours journey we had climbed 5,000 feet and the difference in the temperature was considerable—it freezes here every night at this time of the year. Tod brought up the remainder on 20 November. He had a twenty-four hours' delay on the line owing to a break-down.

We have settled down now and are getting used to Quetta; it has many disadvantages, the chief being that it is so far from the India we knew, or from anywhere else. This is a great handicap for polo, especially now that ponies are so hard to get. Arabs from Bombay appear to be our best chance. We hope however to get something going by the time polo is re-started. There is no polo here from November to March. The shooting here is poor, but good duck shooting can be got with a few days' leave down towards Karachi.

We were made very welcome here on arrival by the 4th Gurkhas, our old comrades of Afghanistan days, 1879. They met us on the platform with their Band and also a most welcome fatigue party which took charge of all our kit and enabled us to march straight up to barracks—a very great convenience after the long railway journey.

We have had several cheery dinners together and have also had an opportunity of entertaining the Gurkha Officers.

We are all looking forward to the spring when we are told the place is beautifully green and all gardens at their best. At the present minute we are enjoying a snowstorm.

With all good wishes,

Yours ever,

4 B. R.B.

# SUMMARY OF SERVICES IN FRANCE AND BELGIUM OF THE 2ND BATTALION RIFLE BRIGADE FROM 5 NOVEMBER 1914 TO 11 NOVEMBER 1918.

COMPILED BY MAJOR J. H. ALLDRIDGE.

- |   | Officers | Other Ranks |
|---|----------|-------------|
| (1) Strength of Battalion on landing in France, 5 November, 1914  | 29       | 983         |
| Reinforcements received up to 11 November 1918  | .... 314 | 7,343       |
| 1 Officer and 14 Other Ranks of the original Battalion returned home with the Battalion Headquarters after the War. |          |             |
| (2) Casualties during the War:—   |          |             |

OFFICERS			OTHER RANKS		
Killed		Wounded and missing	Killed		Wounded and missing
73	....	161	719	....	4,728

- (3) The four years and six days during which the Battalion was on Active Service were spent as follows:—

			Years	Days
In battle	....	....	—	73
On outpost	....	....	—	12
In trenches	....	....	1	131
On line of march and in trains			—	66
In bivouac, camp or billets	....		2	90
Total			4	6

The longest period in the trenches without relief was forty days, viz.: 5 August 1918 to 14 September 1918.

- (4) The following have been the awards to the Battalion:—

V.C. ....	....	3	M.B.E. ....	....	1
Brevets	....	5	Military Medal	....	108
C.M.G.	....	2	Bar to M.M.	....	6
D.S.O.	....	7	Meritorious Service		
Bar to D.S.O.		1	Medal ....	....	7
Military Cross....		27	Foreign Decorations		6
Bar to M.C.	....	5	Parchment Certifi-		
D.C.M.	....	35	cates by G.O.C.		
Bar to D.C.M.		1	Division ....		66

86 Officers and Other Ranks have been mentioned in Despatches.

In all the General Despatches of the G. in C., the C.O. of the Battalion has been mentioned.

- (5) During the War the Battalion had:—

- 10 Lieutenant-Colonels.
- 12 Majors 2nd-in-Command.
- 10 Adjutants.
- 1 Quartermaster.
- 5 Transport Officers.
- 6 Medical Officers.
- 4 Interpreters.
- 7 Chaplains.
- 6 Regtl. Sergeants-Major.
- 3 Regtl. Qrmr.-Sergeants.

Of the Colonels—

- 3 were promoted General Officers.
- 2 killed, 3 wounded.
- 1 to Command the 13th Battalion and one returned home in Command.

Brigadier-General Hon. R. Brand, D.S.O., held command of the Battalion in the Field for a period of 1 year and 10 months. He was wounded in December 1917 and resumed command of the Battalion in September 1918.

The Battalion served under nine different Brigadiers, three Divisional, thirteen Corps and ten Army Commanders.

(6) It has served in the following British Corps:—

I, II, III, IV, VIII, IX, X, XIV, XV, XVIII, XIX, XXII, Indian, Australian, and IInd Anzac. In all British Armies (except the IIIrd) and also in two French Armies.

(7) The 1st Line Transport of the Battalion moved its lines and standings on 179 different occasions. Of the original animals that landed in France with the Battalion, ten horses and eight mules were with it throughout the War.

(8) Battalion first entered Belgium 7 a.m. 14 June 1917 and was in Belgium when the Armistice was signed.

(9) It served on the Western Front throughout the War in the following departments:—

France	Belgium
Pas-de-Calais.	Brabant.
Nord.	Hainaut.
Somme.	East Flanders.
Aisne.	West Flanders.
Marne.	
Seine Inferierre.	
Oise.	

## MEMORIAL SERVICE AT WESTMINSTER ABBEY FOR THE RIFLE BRIGADE AND KING'S ROYAL RIFLE CORPS.

A MEMORIAL Service was held at Westminster Abbey at 12 noon on Tuesday 22 July 1919 for the Officers, Warrant Officers, Non-commissioned Officers and Private Riflemen of the two Rifle Regiments who fell in the Great War.

The great Abbey was crowded with relatives and friends of the fallen and the whole Service was extremely impressive.

The Bishop of London gave an address of which the following, dealing with the services of the Rifle Brigade from its formation in 1800 was the first portion.

In the second portion of his address he similarly dealt with the services of the 60th since 1808 when their old 5th Battalion fought alongside of the Riflemen of our 1st and 2nd Battalions in the opening days of the Peninsular War.

“WE are commemorating to-day the deeds of two of the most famous Regiments in the British Army. The Rifle Brigade was raised in 1800 as the Rifle Corps and fought under Nelson at Copenhagen in 1801, and again in 1809 as rearguard to Sir John Moore in the retreat of Corunna. All three Battalions fought at Waterloo, and in the Crimean War at the Alma led the advance across the river. In the Mutiny and in



South Africa they carried on the same traditions, but it was reserved for the late War to show the world fully of what the Regiment was really capable.

"It is not too much to say that in the late War there was no battle in which this great Regiment did not take part. In the Battle of the Marne they were again, as at the Alma, the first Battalion to cross the river. Ypres, Neuve Chapelle, St. Eloi, Loos, Ypres again, the Somme, Arras, Messines, Monchy, Passchendaele all saw the Regiment in action, and there were also Battalions in Egypt, Palestine, India, Mesopotamia and Salonica, but it was perhaps Fromelles which will stand out before them all. A tribute is paid to the work of the 2nd Battalion on this day in a letter written by a *German Roman Catholic Priest* serving as a volunteer in the ranks, and afterwards killed in action, who writes :—

" 'After two hours' fighting the enemy was beaten back. You can scarcely have an idea of the work this represented. How these Englishmen had in twelve hours dug themselves in! The hundred fellows who were in our trenches had brought with them an enormous quantity of ammunition, a machine-gun, and one they had captured from us. With the aid of the material lying about they had got everything ready and ship-shape for defence. Almost every single man of them had to be put out of action with hand-grenades. *They were heroes all, brave and true to the end, until death.* We captured about fifty of them, *well set up, extremely muscular soldiers.* In the course of the day we picked up about thirty more of them wounded. They were all men of the "*active English Rifles-Brigade.*" Their pride or their mistrust of us was such that Officers, seeing that the situation was hopeless, tried to commit suicide. *Men who were only mercenaries could not behave like this.*'

"In this action, three Officers and 195 Riflemen came out of action; twenty-one Officers and over 700 men were killed or wounded.

"As marks of distinction for these many actions, the

Regiment received the following honours; in addition to the honours granted to Officers, which included three Victoria Crosses, the following honours and rewards were given the N.C.O.s and Riflemen:—

	Number
“Permanent Commissions granted ...	40
Victoria Crosses ...	7
Distinguished Conduct Medals ...	206
Bars to Distinguished Conduct Medals ...	27
Military Crosses ...	9
Meritorious Service Medals... ..	84
Military Medals ...	914
Bars to Military Medals ...	24
British Empire Order ...	5
Foreign Decorations ...	46

“But the greatest roll of honour of all were the 546 Officers, and the 11,075 Warrant Officers, N.C.O.s and Men who laid down their lives for the cause of Justice and Freedom, and it is in their great memory that we hold this Memorial Service in the Abbey to-day.

“With the Rifle Brigade, is associated in death as it has always been in life the King’s Royal Rifles.

\* \* \* \*

“Truly we may say of these two great Regiments: ‘They were lovely and pleasant in their lives and in their deaths they were not divided.’

\* \* \* \*

“We are met to-day to blazon their dear names for ever upon the Roll of their Country’s Honour, and also to commend their souls to God as into the Hands of a Faithful Creator and in the certain hope of resurrection to eternal life.”

—

## THE REGIMENTAL HISTORY.

---

PART II of the Regimental History was issued in November 1919. It embraces the period of our story between the return of the 1st and 2nd Battalions from the Coruña Campaign in January 1809 up to the pursuit of King Joseph's Army after the great victory of Vitoria in 1813.

It had been the Author's intention to include in this Second Part the whole of the Peninsular War (up to April 1814) as well as the New Orleans Expedition and the Waterloo Campaign so as to complete the Napoleonic Wars. But it was found that it would make Part II, already very large, far too bulky and the idea had with regret to be abandoned. As a matter of historical fact, the arrangement thus perforce adopted, has a good deal to be said in its favour. For it has resulted in a broad division of the long-drawn old tale of the Peninsular War into three distinct phases, each contained in a separate volume.

Thus Part I contains the story of the early days of the first phase; Roliça and Vimeiro in 1808 and the Coruña Campaign 1808-1809, and so it is that Part II is devoted to what may be fairly considered to be the second or great phase of the War, which included the formation and the main work of the Famous Light Division during the eventful years 1809 to 1813.

The large maps issued with this part carry Wellington's Army up to the French Frontier on the Bidassoa.

In Part III, when it is issued, will be found an account of the subsequent fighting in the Pyrenees, the invasion of France and the final victory at Toulouse in April 1814, which may be justly viewed as the third phase of the great struggle.

The Author may be forgiven if he retails here the time occupied by him in the compilation of Parts I and II of the History.

Part I, begun in June 1909, was published at the end of 1912; some three and a half years.

Part II took double the time, namely 1913 to 1919; it is however double the size of Part I.

Part III is now well advanced.

The peculiar difficulties caused by the War must be known to appreciate the reasons for this long delay. To begin with, the Author who had decided some years before it began to hand over the Editorship of the CHRONICLE on the completion of the twenty-fifth volume for 1914, found himself upon the outbreak of the War with practically the whole work of the CHRONICLE thrown on his hands since all who had hitherto assisted him were engaged in the War. In addition, there were the difficulties and delays caused by the Censor and by war conditions, for he was obliged to make eight journeys to and from Spain by sea and land during the four years of war. The difficulties of travel and of carrying military papers, maps, etc., through France and Spain and the risks of taking them by sea owing to submarine troubles can be imagined.

There were also great delays caused by the dislocation of the printing trade. The enormous rise in the cost of printing and publishing during the War is a matter of common knowledge. As regards the

History it is sufficient to say that the actual cost was *over double* the price estimated in 1912. The same condition of things applied to the production of the CHRONICLE.

When however Part II was eventually published, it met with a reception which was most gratifying to the Author and tended literally to make him forget the seven years' hard labour which its production had entailed, for the most part under very trying circumstances, owing to troubles and losses caused by the War.

The following are extracts from some of the principal reviews. No review however gave the Author greater pleasure than the letter from the senior Colonel Commandant which precedes the series.

The author takes this opportunity of thanking his old brother Riflemen for their appreciation of his work for the Regiment.

FROM MAJOR-GENERAL SIR L. V. SWAINE.

" 14, QUEEN'S GATE, S.W.

" 15 January 1920.

" MY DEAR VERNER,

" . . . . I write to congratulate you on the success of the second volume of our History. Every word of it has been read out to me and I have thoroughly enjoyed it from beginning to end.

" The story of the Barrosa Battle, the death of Craufurd, the Storming of Badajoz and the final Victory at Vitoria are thrilling incidents of thrilling campaigns.

" In your chapter on 'The Light Division' the introduction of Kincaid's cheerful 'Random Shots' makes the more serious episodes stand out in bold relief.

" The way you deal with Napier, Oman and

Fortescue have added enormously to the interest of this volume and the Regiment cannot be too grateful to you for the great trouble you have taken and the splendid addition you have made to Military History and to that of the Rifle Brigade in particular.

“Yours sincerely,

“L. V. SWAINE.”

### REVIEWS.

*TIMES*, 27 November 1919.

A REGIMENTAL history, though few may recognize the fact, is one of the most difficult of all books to write. The object of such a history is to present, not only to the officers, but to the non-commissioned officers and men, a record of the past actions of the regiment which shall bring home to them the great deeds and the great traditions of the past, stimulating all ranks to take pattern by the regimental heroes of old time and to uphold and, if possible, to enhance the fair fame which has been handed down to them. First of all, then, a regimental history must be pleasant to read, which means that it must be constructed and written with literary skill. This at all times is a difficult thing, and where a regiment is concerned with the operations of a large army, which in themselves form only a part of great strategic movements, it becomes very difficult indeed. In the first place the general strategic situation must be set down very briefly but very clearly; the movements of the army in their relation must likewise be concisely summed up; also the movements of the division and the brigade to which the regiment belonged, and finally the doings of the regiment itself. But to summarize any great events or plans briefly and clearly they must be mastered with very intimate knowledge and by long and close study; and to make the regimental exploits stand out in due, but not excessive, relief against this background is a task to tax literary powers of the highest order. But then the literary man has not as a rule the military experience which enables him to form always a sound judgment upon military events; and, on the other hand, the military officer as a rule does not possess the requisite literary skill to turn his military knowledge to the best literary account.

Colonel Willoughby Verner, as regimental historian of the Rifle Brigade, enjoys rather exceptional advantages. He is an accomplished soldier; he is no novice with the pen; he is an enthusiastic Rifleman; and—a very happy endowment for a chronicler of the Peninsular War—he has lived much in Spain, and is quite at home

both with the Spanish and the Portuguese languages. As a natural consequence his history is far above the average of regimental histories. He has a great story to tell, for the fame of the old 95th in the Peninsula has never been exceeded by that of any regiment of any army in any war; and he tells it well. As invariably happens when any one regiment has distinguished itself highly, some of its officers have left behind them books of memoirs and reminiscences which are invaluable in showing the spirit which animated the old 95th; and these Colonel Verner has supplemented by the discovery of one or two manuscript journals. The young rifleman perusing these pages should be able to gather without difficulty what all the fighting was about and the particular share that his regiment took in it, and there are plenty of good maps and plans to enable him to follow the operations closely. The general historian of the Peninsular War, moreover, will find in the chapter on Barrosa entirely new light upon that famous action and upon the operations that led up to it. . . . Colonel Verner knows how to make good use of appendices, and we must compliment him on the lucidity and interest of that dealing with the forced march of the Light Brigade to Talavera. In fact, we pronounce without hesitation that this is a good regimental history, with good text, good maps, good illustrations; and the Officers of the Rifle Brigade will have no excuse if they fail to teach their men all that has made the name of Old Ninety-five one of the most famous in the British Army.

---

GLASGOW HERALD, 20 November 1919.

To turn the pages of this volume is to feel again something of the rapture of the schoolboy poring by the fireside over Grant's *Romance of War* and marching, in his dreams, with a Highland Regiment over the sun-scorched plateaux and across the sterile mountains of the Peninsula. There is, indeed, a strangely intimate appeal in Colonel Verner's record of the activities of the 95th or Rifle Regiment from the days of Wellington's Douro campaign down to the time when, Vittoria cleared of the retreating enemy, the British troops were closing in on Pampeluna and the passes of the Pyrenees. We view the advances and the retreats, the skirmishes and the battles, the sieges and the escalades of those stirring years from the standpoint of the individual Rifleman and of the regimental officer. We see the Rifleman in his dark green uniform and black cross-belts trudging along the wretched tracks that formed the roads of the Peninsula; under his ball shako with its bugle badge his weather-beaten face is begrimed with dust and sweat; his equipment, arms, regimental necessaries, and spare clothing form a burden that renders almost insignificant the weight under which in recent years shoulders ached as Battalions marched along the highways of France. Not only does Colonel Verner give graphic

descriptions of the ordered shock of a pitched battle, with its formal tactics and precise manœuvres, but he also traces in detail the first tentative fumbling of an outpost action, the thin and fitful crackle of musketry, the pause of uncertainty and surmise, the retreat on the outpost line of defence or the rushing up of reinforcements. The weather conditions under which the troops marched and fought receive the detailed treatment which their importance merits. To Scottish students of military history the account of the career of Major-General Robert Crauford, Commander of the famous Light Division, will be of particular interest.

---

*BELFAST NEWS LETTER*, 20 November 1919.

We have received Vol. II of this great work by Colonel Verner (late Rifle Brigade), author of *The Military Life of H.R.H. George, Duke of Cambridge*. The period covered, 1809-13, is short, but it was a momentous one in the history of the Brigade and in that of the United Kingdom. The book is dedicated to H.R.H. the Duke of Connaught, who is Colonel-in-Chief of the Brigade. In the opening chapter an account is given of the development of rifle fire in the British Army from 1800 to 1815. "The Rifles," it is stated, were included in almost every expedition of note, and they almost invariably distinguished themselves. "Whether it was under Nelson at Copenhagen, or at the storming of Monte Video under Auchmuty, with Wellesley in Portugal, or under Moore at Coruña, their deeds were in everyone's mouth." . . . . In the chapter on Massena's retreat in 1811 Wellington's praise of the work of the Rifle Brigade is recorded. The Battle of Fuentes de Onoro, in the same year, Soult's attempt to relieve Badajoz, the terrible Battle of Albuera, at the conduct of which Wellington was annoyed owing to the great losses and the disorganisation of his plans; the Siege of Tarifa 1811-12, in which there was a general order thanking the Riflemen for their distinguished gallantry; and the storming of Ciudad Rodrigo in the latter year are dealt with in detail. The Campaign of Salamanca was one of the most successful in the Peninsular War, and it prepared the way for the concluding victories which brought Wellington and his Army out of Spain into France. The chapter on the brilliant British victory at Vitoria is one of the best in the book. The Riflemen had the honour of being mentioned in Wellington's despatch written after this battle. There are many illustrations, maps, and plans, and the book is produced in a most attractive style. A photogravure portrait of Wellington forms the frontispiece.

---



*MANCHESTER GUARDIAN*, 24 December 1919.

In *The History and Campaigns of the Rifle Brigade*, Part II, by Colonel Willoughby Verner, there is a thoroughly well-told history of Wellington's Peninsular operations, from which we learn something about the human element in the campaigns, particularly what sort of men were those who in the neat green uniform of the Rifles—spick and span enough in the coloured illustrations of the book, often shreds and patches in real life, as the text reminds us—used the Baker rifle so effectively in Wellington's tactical schemes. Salamanca, indeed, we are told, was the only one of the great victories in which the illustrious 95th did not bear a prominent part. There is a freshness of judgment about many of the pages in this handsome volume; Colonel Willoughby Verner's residence in Spain and knowledge of the Peninsula enliven his descriptions of battles, sieges, and marches with personal notes and independent research. His account of Barrosa, for example, deserves close attention for its study of the topography of the battle-field. He shows that the map in Oman's *History of the War* is incorrect. One of the excellent maps of the present volume attempts to fix the hourly stages of the famous forced march made by the Light Brigade when they were hurrying to join Wellington before Talavera. By carefully-reasoned arguments the author disposes of Napier's version of sixty-two miles, and estimates the march at probably forty-two miles in twenty-six hours.

---

*ARMY AND NAVY GAZETTE*, 6 December 1919.

The period covered by this second volume of Colonel Verner's great work is between the years 1808 and 1813, and beginning with an account of the Walcheren Expedition, it tells us the story of the first portion of the war in the Peninsula, and of the Battles of Talavera, Bussaco, Barrosa, Fuentes d'Onor and Vitoria, with the two great sieges of Ciudad Rodrigo and Badajoz. Colonel Verner has consulted all the authorities and made deep research, and as a result he is able not only to give us an admirable general account of all that transpired, but he contrives further to supply a most detailed narrative of the daily life of the Battalions of the Rifle Brigade, which served in the great war in Spain, and has rescued from oblivion many deeply interesting points of contemporary regimental history. So very many authorities have dealt in modern times with the campaigns in the Peninsula that it might reasonably have been expected that there was nothing fresh to be said, no new discoveries to be made, and that there was little left for the teller of this old tale but to reveal such minor details as come to light from time to time in the letters and diaries of the subordinate actors

in the great drama. But Colonel Verner has travelled widely in Spain, and has been over much of the ground whereon our Armies fought, and in regard to certain operations—the Battle of Barrosa is a case in point—he shows that even so careful a historian as Professor Oman has given a wholly incorrect picture of the main features of the battle-field. The writer goes carefully into the question of the distance covered in the forced march to Talavera; his conclusions are admirably clearly stated and appear to be incontestable, and Napier's estimate of the length of the march must now regretfully be ignored. Colonel Willoughby Verner has good reason to be proud of the work he has done for his old Corps; this second volume is a worthy successor to his first. It is beautifully got up, is well illustrated with plates of uniforms of the period, and the maps provided are well drawn and not overloaded with place names, as is too frequently the case.

---

SUNDAY TIMES, 7 December 1919.

To write the history of his own regiment cannot but be a congenial task to the enthusiastic soldier, and when, as in Colonel Verner's case, the historian complements his enthusiasm with an extreme care for accuracy and a knowledge amplified by a deal of research, the work inevitably rises above the average of its kind. In the second part of his *History and Campaigns of the Rifle Brigade, 1809-1813*, Colonel Willoughby Verner deals with the Campaigns of the Rifle Brigade from 1809 to 1813, the period of the Peninsula, where they achieved a fame second to none.

As a purely regimental history it is admirably done, but there is much in it to interest others than the wearers of the green jacket alone. In dealing with the work of the Brigade, Colonel Verner naturally shows it in relation also to the operations as a whole, and he has some fresh points of view to bring forward in many cases. In particular, he devotes considerable space to amending the "extraordinary error" of Sir William Napier and others in the distance covered in the famous forced march on Talavera. Colonel Verner, in setting down his view that the distance covered was forty-two and not sixty-two miles in the twenty-six hours, lays the blame for the error on Napier's incorrect valuation of the Spanish league, which has many different lengths.

In a task of much difficulty the author has succeeded in effecting a narrative which, eminently readable, has not sacrificed facts to style, nor style to facts. Excellent maps, illustrations, and appendices add to the value and clarity of the volume.

*THE WESTMINSTER GAZETTE*, 14 February 1920.

Incidentally the history of the rifle regiments is the record of the greatest transformation in the art of war. More than any other weapon or invention the rifle has dominated modern battles. Some, perhaps, may be ready to question the statement. But despite improvements in artillery, and the effect of other inventions, the opinion that infantry armed with the rifle must remain the core and true backbone of armies, and continue to have the decisive word, is the sound opinion. On what grounds? Because in changing the old musket into a weapon of precision its present-day representative, the rifle, changed warfare from a struggle mainly of muscle into a contest chiefly of mind. It brought into play the skill of individual soldiers, and brought it into play on a mass scale. With the smooth-bore musket and the bayonet men of necessity fought in close crowds. Equally with the rifle they fight in open order, and on a radically different system of tactics. In reviving old musketry tactics of massed attack, and "football scrum" advances, relying rather on the mechanism of artillery and machine-guns than on individual skill, the Germans in the late war really were exhibiting a throw-back. The extent to which this lowered the fighting value of their armies is almost incalculable. Unfortunately we, through the influence of "hustlers," were a good deal bitten by the same heresy. In the view of some "hustlers," whatever the Germans did must be right. We greatly swelled our casualties in consequence. At the bottom of it, sound military theory is sound sense.

Colonel Verner, therefore, is perfectly right in estimating the traditions of the rifle regiments as among the most precious possessions of the British Army. He is right in being proud of them, and the monumental work on his late Regiment, of which this handsome illustrated quarto is the second volume, besides appealing to those who value the Rifle Brigade's great and justly-earned fame, should serve as a reminder that there are some things we cannot discount without peril. Just as it took years before the invention of Captain Shrapnel was brought into use, and the proposal for his improved shell lay in a War Office pigeon-hole for a decade, so nearly eighty years went by before the old musket was abandoned in the British Army for the vastly superior weapon which had superseded it. During most of that time the rifleman continued to be ranked as a specialist. It was not only the power of the newer arm which enabled the rifle regiments to do what at the time appeared wonders; it was, as stated, the fact that the rifle brought the faculties and skill of every man far more effectively into play. Simple as it is, that fact was not seen. By some it is not seen even now, though the rifle has been in use a century and a half. For these reasons the first chapter in this volume, on "The Development of Rifle Fire in the Army, 1800-1815," might very profitably be read by certain authorities, especially by some non-professional authorities.

D.

*SPECTATOR*, 10 April 1920.

The Rifle Brigade is one of the few Regiments which may be accounted fortunate in their historians. Colonel Willoughby Verner, who edited the *Rifle Brigade Chronicle* for years, and who has now completed the second part of a History of the Rifle Brigade, is as competent as he is enthusiastic. His new volume, on the five years from 1809 to 1813, testifies to much patient research in the records, supplemented by regimental tradition and by personal knowledge of the battlefields, which is peculiarly valuable, for example, in the case of Barrosa. Moreover, Colonel Willoughby Verner is a pleasant and lucid writer and his maps are excellent. It might be thought that there was nothing new to say about the Peninsular War, after Napier, Professor Oman, and Mr. Fortescue, but the author's treatment of the familiar theme is surprisingly fresh and instructive. Companies of the Rifle Brigade were present at every important action in the Peninsula, except Albuera, so that its historian was bound to consider the campaigns as a whole. Wellington attached great importance to his Riflemen, as part of the dense screen of skirmishers which he invariably threw out in front of his main body before a battle. His object was to protect his line as far as possible from harassing fire until the action began. For skirmishing the rifle was obviously far more useful than the infantry musket, the famous "Brown Bess," whose effective range was nominally 300 yards, but which could not be trusted to hit a target at 100 yards. A screen of trained Riflemen could keep the enemy's skirmishers well out of range of our infantry. . . . The Rifleman was thus a valuable new element in the British Army, and Wellington's military genius was well illustrated by the care which he bestowed on the development of the Rifle Companies. The famous Light Division, which was formed in 1810 and which was largely composed of Riflemen, including the 1st Battalion of the Rifle Brigade, was designed, as Professor Oman has pointed out, as a permanent screen for the Army, and served its purpose admirably under Craufurd.

The Rifle Brigade was the first British Rifle Regiment. It was embodied in 1800 as the Rifle Corps, and in 1803 was styled the 95th or Rifle Regiment. But it was not, of course, the first body of Riflemen in the British Army. Several Corps of foreign rifles were raised about 1794 for service in the West Indies. The 60th, now the Kings's Royal Rifle Corps, raised a 5th Battalion of Riflemen in 1797, and afterwards incorporated some of the foreign Riflemen in Rifle Companies of the other Battalions. Other Regiments, a few years later, followed the example and had Rifle Companies of their own. Nevertheless, the 95th long retained its distinction as the only Regiment of British Riflemen. It consisted of three Battalions in the Peninsular days. . . . The familiar uniform of dark green and black, apparently borrowed from continental armies, seems to have been attractive by reason of its novelty, though it was

as tight-fitting and cumbrous as the scarlet uniform of the Line. The author tells us that when the 95th, after its return from Corunna, asked for 350 recruits to fill its depleted ranks, no fewer than 1,300 men offered themselves for the "Green Jackets," and the War Office had to form a 3rd Battalion. . . . Badajoz was of course the most severe test that the Light Division, and the 95th, had in these trying years. For the stormers failed at the main breach, despite their desperate bravery and their heavy losses, and the honour of taking the fortress fell to the detachments attacking at other points. At Ciudad Rodrigo, a few weeks earlier, the Light Division had had better luck in the assault, but had lost its first Commander, Craufurd, who was mortally wounded while directing the storming parties. The author records the bitter criticisms passed by some of his Officers on Craufurd as a martinet and a somewhat rash and obstinate tactician. But there can be no doubt, as the author says, that Craufurd was the ideal Commander for what was virtually a new branch of the Service, and that the success of the Light Division was largely due to his determination and his daring.

We must not be tempted into discussing the Peninsular War as sketched by Colonel Willoughby Verner. But we may direct attention to his thorough examination of the famous forced march of the Light Brigade to Talavera. The Brigade consisted of the 1st Battalions of the Ninety-fifth, Forty-third and Fifty-second under Craufurd. It landed in Portugal on 3rd July 1809, and began to march quietly up country to join Wellington, who had advanced into Spain. It was at Navalmoral, in the Tagus Valley on 27th July, when it received orders to reach Talavera with the utmost speed as the French were about to attack with greatly superior numbers. . . . Napier says that in this famous forced march the Light Brigade covered sixty-two miles in twenty-six hours. Later authorities have reduced the length of the march, Colonel Willoughby Verner, after an exhaustive study of the question, concludes that it was a march of forty-two miles in twenty-six hours, which was in any case a very remarkable performance considering all the circumstances. He points out further that Napier's error was due not to sheer carelessness, but to a mistake in converting the Spanish leagues into miles. It seems that in Spain at that day four different "leagues" were in use, varying in length from about two and a half to over four miles. Wellington said that Craufurd marched twelve leagues that day. But these leagues were "legal" leagues of three and a half English miles—not of four and a quarter miles, as Napier thought. Colonel Willoughby Verner has thus brought the authorities into accord and settled once for all a very old controversy. We shall look with great interest for the continuation of his story of the Rifle Brigade.

---

## "A SHORT ACCOUNT OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE."

SOME time before the War, when it became clear to me that it would take years to finish the *History of the Rifle Brigade* I decided to write an abridged History for the especial benefit of our N.C.O.s and Riflemen. I got so far as to make an arrangement with a publisher for its issue but owing to the great tax on my time, due to the compilation of the "History" and annual issue of the CHRONICLE, I was obliged to postpone all idea of bringing out this book from year to year. Then came the War, and with it the influx of scores of Officers and thousands of men who, with rare exceptions, knew very little about the Regimental history and traditions.

About this time (1915) I got letters from Commanding Officers of the newly raised Battalions as well as from other Officers urging me to get out a short History. As this was at the time beyond my powers, I looked round to try and find somebody who could do it. Fortunately in this I was successful and the result was Captain H. G. Parkyn's *Short History* of some fifty-five octavo pages, for which I stood sponsor. This was published in 1917 and has proved of very great value. The first edition of it has been sold out and a new one is in course of preparation, bringing it up to date.

After the War, during the year 1919, when the

great mass of men were demobilized and the four Regular Battalions were practically raised anew, I again received letters from Commanding Officers and others, asking me to compile an even shorter History than the *Short History*. This, it was stated, was inadequate, in view of the emergency created by the great influx of youthful soldiers. It was suggested that the necessary information might even be given on a folding card, and that every recruit should be issued with one on joining! A brief attempt to compile such a card, in view of the amount of information demanded, showed the impossibility of such a plan. The matter however was peculiarly urgent, for there was a great lack of N.C.O.s and an almost entire absence of soldiers of any standing to "hand on" to the recruits the traditions of the Regiment.

The upshot was that in January 1920, I wrote a *Short Account of the Rifle Brigade* which occupied altogether only thirty-five pages of a small booklet<sup>1</sup> just one quarter the length of the *Short History* and of course containing much less detail. The booklet has a stiff cardboard cover of rifle green with black border and with the Regimental Badge (correctly drawn) printed in silver on it. The frontispiece is a reproduction of the well-known sketch by M. Edouard Detaille of one of our Riflemen in 1879.

The actual story of the Regiment is told in less than twenty-five pages. In the middle of the book there is a double-page map of the world, showing the British Empire with reference numbers on it to the places enumerated in an accompanying "Roll of

---

<sup>1</sup> *A Short Account of the Rifle Brigade*, 16mo,  $4\frac{1}{4} \times 5\frac{1}{2}$  in. Published by John Bale, Sons and Danielsson. Price 12s. per dozen copies, or 1s. 3d. per copy post free.

Campaigns and Actions where the Regiment has fought." This Roll, which occupies three pages, also gives the Battalions employed in the various campaigns and the dates of the events.

At the end of the book there is a note on the origin of the famous Regimental March, another dealing with a few "Regimental Traditions and Customs" with a final one on our "Colonels-in-Chief."

Prior to printing it, it was submitted to the Commanding Officers of the Depôt and Home Battalions and was pronounced by them to be exactly what was wanted. The demand for it since its publication well justified this opinion.

For suggestions as to its scope and arrangement I am particularly indebted to Colonel John Harington, commanding the 3rd Battalion.

The book was prepared in a great hurry and no doubt there are omissions and minor errors. I should be greatly obliged if anybody who reads the book will write and point out any omissions, more particularly in the matter of "Regimental Traditions and Customs."

---



THE RIFLE BRIGADE PLATOON IN  
MURMANSK.  
1919.

IN March 1919, a Company of Riflemen was formed at the Rifle Depôt for service in Murmansk in Northern Russia. This Company was ordered to be formed entirely of men of the K.R.R.C., but owing to there not being sufficient men of that Corps at the Depôt, it was found necessary to form one Platoon from the Rifle Brigade.

This Company was styled "No. 1 Special Company 60th Rifles" and consisted of nine Officers and 216 other ranks, all told. Of this number, the Rifle Brigade found the Company Quartermaster-Sergeant, one Sergeant, two Corporals, two Buglers, and forty-two Private Riflemen. Total all ranks forty-nine. All the Officers were from the K.R.R.C. and most of them held Reserve or Temporary Commissions.

The Company left Winchester on 9 April, sailed from Tilbury on the 10th and arrived off Murmansk on the 16th. On the following day it entrained for Soroka arriving there on the 20th. Here it remained till the end of the month living in a railway train; there were some snow blizzards and extreme cold. The time was occupied in Company training, drill and physical training, with intervals of being inoculated and vaccinated, varied by "snowballing and sliding on the White Sea."

On 1 May it proceeded by rail to Siding 19 where it was placed in a hutment and was employed on the

construction of an aerodrome. On the 8th it railed to Siding 13 where it fell in with about fifty Bolsheviks and there was some skirmishing on the two following days. On the 14th the Company drove the Bolsheviks out of a village; two Officers and eight other ranks were wounded. The village was named "60th Village" in honour of the affair.

On the 18th the advance was resumed along the line by an armoured train and the Company occupied a hill between Sidings 12 and 11. A Bolshevik armoured train with machine-guns and 3-inch guns fired into the Camp.

On the 19th there was some inconclusive skirmishing amid thick woods and swamps, and the following day the Company returned to "60th Village."

During the next few weeks, there was some skirmishing with the Bolsheviks near Siding 10 in which Companies of the Royal Marine L.I., Middlesex, etc., were engaged, as well as some Russian troops, Serbians, Americans and Italians. The weather was now hot and thundery and the mosquitoes a great nuisance. On 23 June, an attack was made on the Bolsheviks near Railhead but without success, and on the 25th the Company was relieved by Italians and withdrawn.

On 3 July Peace Day Celebrations were held and we learn that "Aunt Sally and cocoanut shies were very popular."

On the 5th the Bolsheviks were attacked and driven from Kapaselga village.

On the 19th there was another skirmish near Siding 8. By the end of the month the weather became colder and wetter and it was plain that the Russian summer was over.

During these desultory operations, the chief trouble seems to have been caused by the climate. Only two men in the R.B. Platoon were wounded.

Company Quartermaster-Sergeant Conoran was awarded the Meritorious Service Medal, as well as the Silver Medal for Gallantry. Riflemen W. Spence and R. Wethers were also awarded the Silver Medal for Gallantry.

---

## ADVENTURES OF AN ADVANCE PARTY OF THE BATTALION OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE ORDERED TO INDIA IN 1919.

- 18 August. Copy of Adjutant's instructions. "You may proceed on leave for three weeks prior to sailing for India."
- 20     ,,     Telegram: "Copy W.O./S.O.S. 303. Advance Party will sail 23rd inst. Southampton, S.S. *Forgetwhich*. Addressed all concerned."
- 21     ,,     Telegram: "W.O./S.O.S. 303 cancelled. Full leave granted. Adjutant."
- 24     ,,     Telegram: "Return at once. Party proceeds Tilbury 30th inst. Adjutant."
- 28     ,,     Copy of Adjutant's letter. "War Office instructions cancelled. You may now proceed on leave pending embarking for India."
- 1     Sept. Telegram: "Copy W.O./S.O.S. 305. Advance Party will sail 5th inst. Plymouth, S.S. *Godhelpusall*. Addressed all concerned."
- 4     ,,     Adjutant's letter. "You may now proceed on leave; all previous instructions being cancelled."
- 7     ,,     Telegram and urgent memo. from Adjutant. "Do you wish to be recommended for Staff course?" Answer in the negative (by telephone).  
Telegram: "Return at once. Advance Party proceeding Portsmouth 10th inst. Adjutant."
- 11     ,,     Indefinite leave granted.
- 12     ,,     Telegram: "Copy W.O./S.O.S. 306. Advance Party will leave Liverpool 15th inst. S.S. *Teucer*. Addressed all concerned."
- 15     ,,     (a.m.) 0800 hours left Aldershot. Arrived Waterloo 1000 hours. One lorry (three ton) reported present. Officers' kits alone 2½ tons. Instructions for party, less one Officer, four other ranks (baggage guard) "Proceed Euston by tube changing at Bank." Lift girl at Tube station doubtful about this and examines warrant for five minutes. An old woman in the tube will insist that the men are "Some heroes from Mesopotamia come home to be demobilized." The men begin to wish to God they were. Change at the Bank. More trouble with lift girls. Arrival at Euston with ten minutes to catch train.

- 15 Sept. (p.m.) Arrival at Liverpool. First sight of S.S. *Teucer*. No P. & O.; only a "converted" cargo boat. People on board only consist of eighteen other Advance Parties and two Companies of the Suffolk Regiment. Everybody very angry, as each party had had visions of going by P. & O.  
(Night.) The steward refuses to produce anything to drink except water.
- 16 „ The steward still refuses.
- 17 „ The steward at last relents and for the first time is filled with admiration for the Army—at least for it's thirst.
- 18 Sept. At sea. No very great adventures except that a little  
to Rifleman nearly fell through a port hole with excitement when the first whale was sighted; and  
9 Oct. the ship's Chief Officer shot with a shot gun a flying fish in the Indian Ocean. He was even more surprised than the flying fish. The ship called at Port Said, Suez and Aden before reaching Bombay. Very hot in the Red Sea. Twice the ship had to be turned round and the ship's baker died of heat. The ship itself was most uncomfortable, having iron decks, no sitting rooms for either Officers or other ranks, practically no sanitary or washing arrangements, while a most unpleasant smell made itself known in the heat—presumably the result of cargo. The only relieving feature was the kindness of the ship's Officers who went a long way out of their way to make everything as pleasant as possible for us under the circumstances.
- From the Red Sea wirelessed to a High Official at Simla asking for name of station. Twenty-four hours out from Bombay wireless reply "Belgaum as desired."
- 9 „ Arrived Bombay; ordered to Rest Camp at Kirkee near Poona.
- 13 „ At Kirkee. Four Advance Parties all hear they are going to Belgaum.
- 15 „ Letter from above-mentioned High Official to say that the Battalion will go to Belgaum. Officers of the Advance Party made members of the Club of Western India.
- 16 „ Officers of the Advance Party engaged in supporting themselves against the bars of the Gymkhana Club, Kirkee Boat Club and Club of Western India. Other ranks patronise the Cinema Kirkee and the attendant Café.
- 17 „ Still doing so.
- 18-28 „ Still doing so.

- 18 Oct. Enquire at the telegraph office if there are any telegrams for the Advance Party or any member of it. One produced for one of the Officers. Opened with great excitement to learn the doings of 1,000 men. Telegram reads "Splendid boy arrived." The rest of the Advance Party hope that this has been delivered in error to the Officer concerned. He looked as though he did too.
- 28 „ Instructions from Simla arrive: "4th Bn. 60th K.R.R.C. will proceed at once to Belgaum. 4th Bn. 60th Rifle Brigade to Jubbulpore."
- 31 „ "Previous instructions cancelled. 4th Bn. Rifle Brigade will proceed Quetta. Battalion due to arrive Karachi 10.11.19."
- 2 Nov. Advance Party proceed to Bombay. Collect mess boxes left with Cox since 1914. Find most boxes broken and some of contents missing and practically everything not missing, destroyed. Embark for Karachi. Unfortunately the box with all the mess china is dropped while being put on board; the box breaks as does most of the china.
- 4 „ Arrival at Karachi. Party sent to the Rest Camp for the night.
- 5 „ Party leaves by mail for Quetta.
- 7 „ Party arrives at Quetta to take over Roberts' Barracks from the Duke of Wellington's Regiment; but that wasn't their fault for they were ordered to do so.

P.S.—This may not be quite a truthful or accurate account of the Advance Party's adventures and many of the dates are certainly wrong, but it is no worse than what it had to put up with.

A MEMBER OF THE ADVANCE PARTY.

## NEW ZEALAND RIFLE BRIGADE.

ON 7 February 1919, Brigadier-General A. G. Stewart commanding the New Zealand Force wrote to H.R.H. The Colonel-in-Chief asking that H.R.H. would give his permission for the New Zealand Rifle Brigade to be allowed to adopt the Silver Badge of the Rifle Brigade in the future. Also for them to be allowed to wear the same Service Dress and Undress and Mess Kit as the Rifle Brigade, as well as the black and green hat ribbon and tie worn by the Officers of the Rifle Brigade when in plain clothes.

To this request, the following reply was sent by order of H.R.H. :—

“CLARENCE HOUSE,

“ST. JAMES’S, S.W.

“18 February 1919.

“MY DEAR GENERAL,

“The Duke asked me to write and tell you that he has consulted the Colonel Commandants of the Rifle Brigade, and the Regiment have no objection to the New Zealand Rifle Brigade wearing the Service Dress and Undress and Mess Kit of the Rifle Brigade, and also the regimental tie worn by the Officers of the Rifle Brigade, when in plain clothes.

“With regard to the Badge, His Royal Highness understands that, of course, the Battle Honours of the Rifle Brigade would not be put on the Badge, and that you intended to keep the Cross free, and in place of the

words 'Prince Consort's Own,' you would put 'New Zealand Rifle Brigade.'

"I think this covers the whole ground.

"Believe me,

"Yours very sincerely,

"(Signed) PHILIP ASHWORTH

"(A.D.C. to H.R.H.)"

The following is an extract from a letter from the Officer Commanding the 5th (Reserve) Bn. Rifle Brigade to the senior Colonel Commandant of the Regiment.

5TH BN. RIFLE BRIGADE,

RUGELEY CAMP,

STAFFORDSHIRE.

4 June 1919.

DEAR SIR LEOPOLD SWAINE,

. . . . . As you probably know, the New Zealand Rifle Brigade have their Depot at Brocton, about two miles from our camp here. On 14 May they "marched out" to entrain for Southampton, whence they sailed for their own Country. I took the opportunity of sending over some Officers to Brocton and called for a party of Overseas' men to volunteer for what would be a 16-mile march in order to give the New Zealand Rifle Brigade a good send off. The 5th Bn. King's Rifle Corps very kindly lent us their Band for the occasion. As regards Officers, I tried to send representatives of each class of the present-day Rifle Brigade Officer. Captain N. Irvén went in command of the party, taking with him Captain A. S. Herbert, M.C., an Australian (representing the Colonies), Captain A. E. Saunders, D.C.M. (representing the promoted N.C.O.s of the old Regular Army) and 2nd Lieutenant W. E. Rogers (typical of Sandhurst of the War). With them went eighty Overseas' men.

The party had breakfast at 0600 and marched off at 0650. On arrival at Brocton Camp the New Zealand Rifle Brigade were found drawn up on parade, and as our men marched on to their parade ground, the New Zealanders greeted them with a storm of cheers.



After a short rest the whole marched off to Milford Station, where the New Zealanders were to entrain. The Band of the 5th Bn. King's Royal Rifle Corps went first, followed by our party with the New Zealand Rifle Brigade in the rear. On reaching Milford Common, the Column halted and the King's Royal Rifle Corps' Band drew up on one side of the road with our party facing them. The Band struck up "Ninety Five" and when the New Zealand Rifle Brigade went through our party came to the present. When their last Company had got into the station yard to pick up their kit-bags, the Band of the 60th marched in and played topical tunes, whilst our men fraternized with the New Zealanders. As the train left the station the Band struck up "Auld Lang Syne."

The sequel to the above came on Wednesday, 28 May, when the Officer Commanding the New Zealand Rifle Brigade came over here accompanied by six Officers and six N.C.O.s who had been left behind to clear up the camp. I had the Battalion drawn up in "close column" and Lieutenant-Colonel N. F. Shepherd, D.S.O., Commanding the New Zealand Rifle Brigade made a speech and handed over to me a magnificent Silver Cup, the gift of the Officers of the New Zealand Rifle Brigade to the Rifle Brigade. The Cup was given as a memento of the close relations and affection existing between the New Zealand Rifle Brigade, the daughter Regiment, and the Rifle Brigade, the parent. The Cup is to be shot for by the Battalion annually, the conditions of the contest to be decided by the Regiment.

I took the Cup over in the name of the Rifle Brigade and have sent it to be engraved. I wrote to Henuiker and he says he will keep it at the Depot.

Yours very truly,

D. PRIDEAUX-BRUNE,  
*Lieutenant-Colonel,*  
*Commanding 5th Bn. Rifle Brigade.*

---

---

**Record, 1919.**

---

## REGIMENTAL STATE.

1 January 1920.

	Station	Officers	W.O.	Sergts.	Buglers	Rank and file	Total
1st Battalion	...	25	8	39	9	763	844
2nd "	...	47	15	26	17	492	597
3rd "	...	62	14	40	6	530	652
4th "	...	30	7	35	24	800	896
51st (Service) Battalion	...	34	6	44	—	774	858
52nd "	...	36	7	39	—	806	888
5th (Special Reserve) Battalion	...	8	10	50	5	517	590
6th "	...	6	11	24	1	217	259
5th Provisional Company	...	5	1	2	—	34	42
Details Battalion	...	—	9	10	—	202	221
" 4th Battalion	...	—	—	—	—	144	144
Unposted	...	—	3	78	—	263	344
	Total	253	91	387	62	5,542	6,335

## RECORD, 1919.

---

[OWING to the Great War and the fact that the services of the Battalions were described under "War Records" no issue of the CHRONICLE since that for the year 1913 has contained the usual annual "Regimental Record." It is hoped to resume these in the next issue (that for the year 1920).

Meanwhile, to the 1st Battalion must be given the credit of being the first to return to the old custom of sending a Regimental Record to the CHRONICLE, the Editor having received one commencing on the day the Battalion landed in England, namely, 23 April 1919.]

### 1ST BATTALION.

- 23 April. Cadre of Battalion arrived at Aldershot from France. Strength: four Officers, seventy other ranks. Quartered in Oudenarde Barracks.  
Captain and Quartermaster A. E. Ayers, posted to Battalion.
- 15 June. Colonel A. Paley, C.M.G., D.S.O., appointed to command the Battalion.
- 9 July. Captain E. S. B. Williams posted to Battalion as Adjutant.
- 10 „ 2nd Lieutenant R. D. D. Poole posted to Battalion on appointment.
- 11 „ Captain H. B. Norcott posted to Battalion.
- 14 „ Party consisting of Major R. T. Fellowes, D.S.O., M.C.; Lieutenant H. Brierley, M.C., and three other ranks represented the Battalion in the Victory March at Paris.  
Lieutenant C. P. Warren, M.C., posted to Battalion.

- 17 July 2nd Lieutenant V. B. Turner posted to Battalion.
- 21 „ 2nd Lieutenant T. R. Shepherd-Cross posted to Battalion.
- 22 „ Memorial Service in Westminster Abbey. Guard of Honour found from 1st and 4th Battalions, Rifle Brigade and 3rd and 4th Battalions, 60th Rifles. ~~and~~
- 26 „ Presentation of medals by General Sir Archibald Murray, G.O.C.-in-C. Aldershot Command.
- 2 August. Lieutenant T. J. B. Bosville, M.C., 2nd Lieutenants J. A. Taylor, M.C., J. C. Garnett and C. A. Ravn posted to Battalion.
- 7 „ Captain (Brevet Major) E. R. Kewley, D.S.O., M.C., Captain E. A. Hodson, D.S.O., Lieutenant N. R. Harvey, 2nd Lieutenants A. W. Allan, C. Knowles, H. K. Short, R. H. Doynne, and D. R. H. Gwynne posted to Battalion.
- 14 „ Visit of H.R.H. The Colonel-in-Chief, who was photographed with the Officers of the 1st and 4th Battalions, at Ramillies Barracks.
- 25 „ Birthday Sports.
- 10 Sept. 2nd Lieutenants W. R. Starkey and E. A. Ramsay-Fairfax-Lucy posted to Battalion.
- 11 „ Captain H. M. Ramsay-Fairfax-Lucy, M.C., posted to Battalion.
- 13 „ Captain G. H. Huyshe-Eliot posted to Battalion.
- 15 „ Battalion left Aldershot for Tilbury and embarked for Mesopotamia, in S.S. *Karoa*.  
Strength: twenty-five Officers, 789 other ranks.
- 19 „ Called at Gibraltar.
- 22 „ Called at Malta and put ashore one Rifleman (sick).
- 6 Oct. Called at Bombay and put ashore one N.C.O. and seven Riflemen (sick).  
Transhipped to S.S. *Swakopmund* and left for Basra.
- 13 „ Arrived at mouth of the Shatt-al-Arab and transhipped to S.S. *Vita* and proceeded up river.  
Arrived at Basra and marched to camp at the Base Depot at Makina.
- 19 „ Route march through Basra.
- 23 „ Embarked in river boats and barges, for Baghdad, calling at Amara and Kut.
- 31 „ Disembarked on river bank at Baghdad South and camp for a few hours.
- 1 Nov. Entrained for Baiji, in the evening.  
Arrived at Baiji, on River Tigris, 130 miles north of Baghdad, and relieved 6th Bn. Loyal North Lancashire Regiment.

- 21 Nov. Visit by General Sir G. F. MacMunn, K.C.B.,  
K.C.S.I., D.S.O., G.O.C.-in-C. Mesopotamia.
- 28 Dec. Nos. 13 and 14 Platoons ("I" Company) moved to  
Ain Dibs and Mile 170, for outpost duty.

PARTICULARS OF SERVICE OF W.O.S., N.C.O.S. AND RIFLEMEN  
ON 1 JANUARY 1920.

Re-enlisted for 2 years ...	...	...	269
" " 3 " ...	...	...	170
" " 4 " ...	...	...	243
Enlisted on 7 and 5 years' engagement ...	...	...	42
" " 9 and 3 years' " ...	...	...	12
Extended to 12 years ...	...	...	29
Re-engaged for 21 years ...	...	...	16
Continued beyond 21 years ...	...	...	1
Total ...			782

PARTICULARS OF AGE ON 1 JANUARY 1920.

Under 21 years ...	...	...	466
Between 21 and 25 years ...	...	...	204
" 25 and 30 " ...	...	...	60
" 30 and 40 " ...	...	...	49
Over 40 years... ...	...	...	3
Total ...			782

### 3RD BATTALION.

A Draft of thirty-two Riflemen proceeded from the 3rd Battalion at Portsmouth to join the 1st Battalion in Mesopotamia on 22 November 1919.

### 4TH BATTALION.

The Battalion embarked at Tilbury in the *S.S. Sudan* on 21 October 1919 arriving in India on 14 November.  
Strength : Twenty-six Officers and 842 other ranks.

## INCREASE AND DECREASE OF THE REGIMENT DURING THE YEAR, 1919.

					Total other Ranks
Recruits joined	...	...	...	...	1,039
Re-enlisted	...	...	...	...	1,264
Transfers from—					
Regular Army	...	...	...	...	818
Territorial Force	...	...	...	...	2,345
Supernumerary List	...	...	...	...	6
Rejoined from Desertion	...	...	...	...	95
From Army Reserve	...	...	...	...	8
					<hr/>
			Total Increase	...	5,575
					<hr/>
Died at Home	...	...	...	...	30
„ Abroad	...	...	...	...	166
Discharged :—					
After 21 years	...	...	...	...	1
Invalids	...	...	...	...	1,615
Inefficient	...	...	...	...	5
Misconduct	...	...	...	...	15
Other Causes (for re-enlistments, &c.)	...	...	...	...	1,410
Deserters	...	...	...	...	208
To Army Reserve (Demobilisation)	...	...	...	...	14,586
Transfers to Regular Army	...	...	...	...	1,905
„ „ Supernumerary List	...	...	...	...	1
Missing (not previously reported)	...	...	...	...	21
					<hr/>
			Total Decrease	...	19,963
					<hr/>

# ROLL OF COMMANDING OFFICERS, ADJUTANTS AND QUARTERMASTERS OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE.

31 DECEMBER, 1919.

1st Bn. ...	Brevet-Col....Paley, A. J., <i>C.M.G.</i> , <i>D.S.O.</i> Adjnt. ...Capt. E. S. B. Williams. Qmr. ...Capt. A. E. Ayers.
2nd Bn. ...	Lieut.-Col....Davies, W. E., <i>C.M.G.</i> , <i>D.S.O.</i> Adjnt. ...Lieut. G. H. G. Anderson, <i>D.S.O.</i> , <i>M.C.</i> Qmr. ...Major J. H. Alldridge, <i>M.C.</i> , <i>D.C.M.</i>
3rd Bn. ...	Lieut.-Col....Harington, J., <i>C.M.G.</i> , <i>D.S.O.</i> Adjnt. ...Capt. E. J. Wilbraham, <i>M.C.</i> Qmr. ...Capt. A. G. Coombs, <i>M.C.</i>
4th Bn. ...	Lieut.-Col....Seymour, W. W. Adjnt. ...Capt. O. B. Graham, <i>D.S.O.</i> Qmr. ...Capt. F. H. Pryor.
<hr/>	
5th Bn. ...	Major...Sloggett, A. J. H., <i>D.S.O.</i> Adjnt. ...Capt. J. A. V. Duff. Qmr. ...Capt. L. Eastmead, <i>M.C.</i>
6th Bn.. ...	Bt. Lt.-Col....Davies, C. M., <i>D.S.O.</i> Adjnt. ... Qmr. ...Major H. E. Worthing, <i>D.C.M.</i>
<hr/>	
51st Bn. ...	Lieut.-Col....Brand, Hon. R., <i>C.M.G.</i> , <i>D.S.O.</i> Adjnt. ...Lieut. G. E. Burton. Qmr. ...Capt. W. Chester.
52nd Bn. ...	Lieut.-Col....Riddell, E. P. A., <i>C.M.G.</i> , <i>D.S.O.</i> Adjnt. ...Capt. F. A. Hawkins, <i>M.C.</i> Qmr. ...Capt. A. Coulson (Lincoln Regt.).



OFFICERS OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE ON  
THE STAFF OR EXTRA-REGIMENTALLY  
EMPLOYED.

(Compiled by Mr. W. E. Govier.)

1920.

Field-Marshal *Sir* H. H. Wilson, *Bart.*, *G.C.B.*, *D.S.O.*, Chief  
of the Imperial General Staff.

Lieutenant-General *Sir* W. N. Congreve, *V.C.*, *K.C.B.*, *M.V.O.*,  
General Officer Commanding Egyptian Expeditionary  
Force.

Lieutenant-General *Sir* H. F. M. Wilson, *K.C.B.*, Command-  
ing Troops, Constantinople.

Lieutenant-General *Sir* C. D. Shute, *K.C.B.*, *K.C.M.G.*,  
Division Commander.

Major-General *Sir* R. B. Stephens, *K.C.B.*, Commandant  
R.M. College.

Major-General J. T. Burnett-Stuart, *C.B.*, *C.M.G.*, *D.S.O.*

Colonel *Sir* E. T. B. Grogan, *Bart.*, *D.S.O.*, *G.S.O.*, 1st Grade.

Brevet-Colonel W. W. Pitt-Taylor, *C.B.*, *C.M.G.*, *D.S.O.*,  
Military Assistant to Chief of the Imperial General Staff.

Brevet-Colonel R. E. Solly-Flood, *C.M.G.*, *D.S.O.*, Student,  
Staff College.

Brevet-Colonel *Hon.* R. Brand, *C.M.G.*, *D.S.O.*

Brevet-Colonel H. M. Wilson, *D.S.O.*, Company Commander,  
R.M. College.

Lieutenant-Colonel B. H. H. Cooke, *C.M.G.*, *C.B.E.*, *D.S.O.*

Brevet-Lieutenant-Colonel D. J. C. K. Bernard, *C.M.G.*, *D.S.O.*,  
*G.S.O.*, 6th Division.

Brevet-Lieutenant-Colonel *Hon.* M. A. Wingfield, *C.M.G.*,  
*D.S.O.*, Instructor, Staff College.

- Brevet-Lieutenant-Colonel J. A. W. Spencer, *C.M.G.*, *D.S.O.*  
G.S.O., 2nd Grade.
- Brevet-Lieutenant-Colonel R. P. A. de Moleyns, Deputy-  
Assistant-Adjutant-General.
- Brevet-Lieutenant-Colonel Sir T. A. A. M. Cuninghame,  
*Bart.*, *D.S.O.*, Military Attaché.
- Brevet-Lieutenant-Colonel R. S. Follett, *D.S.O.*, Student, Staff  
College.
- Brevet-Lieutenant-Colonel G. M. Lindsay, *C.M.G.*, *D.S.O.*  
Student, Staff College.
- Major H. F. Somerville, *D.S.O.*, School of Musketry.
- Major (Temp. Lieut.-Colonel) R. Verney, Military Secretary  
to Viceroy and Governor-General, E. Indies.
- Major O. C. Downes, *D.S.O.*, *M.C.*
- Major E. R. Mead-Waldo, *D.S.O.*, Machine-gun Corps.
- Major W. V. L. Prescott-Westcar, *D.S.O.*, Machine-gun Corps.
- Major C. W. Ritson, Egyptian Army.
- Major T. E. Baring, G.S.O., 2nd Grade.
- Brevet-Major M. Alexander, *M.C.*, Deputy-Assistant-Adjutant-  
General.
- Brevet-Major R. T. Fellowes, *D.S.O.*, *M.C.*, War Office.
- Brevet-Major C. F. T. Swan, *M.C.*
- Brevet-Major T. R. Eastwood, *D.S.O.*, *M.C.*, Brigade Major,  
Aldershot.
- Brevet-Major O. Sutton-Nelthorpe, *D.S.O.*, *M.C.*, G.S.O., 3rd  
Grade, Ireland.
- Captain L. B. Paget, *M.C.*, Deputy-Assistant-Adjutant-General.
- Captain C. E. Winter, *M.C.*, Staff Captain.
- Captain *Hon.* T. G. B. Morgan-Grenville-Gavin, *D.S.O.*, *M.C.*,  
Student, Staff College.
- Captain *Hon.* J. D. Boyle, *C.B.E.*, *D.S.O.*, Royal Flying Corps.
- Captain R. L. H. Collins, Assistant Embarkation Officer.
- Captain H. J. F. Hunter, *M.C.*, Royal Flying Corps.
- Captain W. E. Gray, *D.S.O.*, *M.C.*, Machine-gun Corps.
- Captain R. A. H. Turing, Machine-gun Corps.
- Captain (Temp. Major) W. Dickinson, King's African Rifles.
- Captain (Temp. Major) J. J. B. Cole, *M.C.*, G.S.O., 2nd Grade.

Captain (Temp. Colonel) R. G. *Lord* Gorell, *C.B.E.*, *M.C.*,  
Deputy Director of Staff Duties.

Lieutenant H. Daniels, *V.C.*, *M.C.*, Assistant Superintendent,  
Physical Training.

Lieutenant A. W. C. V. Purr, Royal Flying Corps.

Lieutenant H. Wood, Machine-gun Corps.

Lieutenant T. Allison, Indian Defence Force.

Lieutenant C. Chillman, Small Arms School.

Lieutenant (Acting Captain) F. V. Kibby, Tank Corps.

Lieutenant N. W. Wadham, Flying Corps.

Lieutenant E. G. Kemp, *M.C.*, West African Frontier Force.

Lieutenant R. Lishmann, Special Service.

Lieutenant W. Fowler, Labour Corps.

Lieutenant R. R. S. Titchener, *M.C.*, Machine-gun Corps.

Lieutenant W. Swanton, King's African Rifles.

Lieutenant E. T. L. Gurdon, *M.C.*, Aide-de-Camp.

Lieutenant W. A. Coryton, Flying Corps.

Lieutenant C. D. G. Franklin, Machine-gun Corps.

Lieutenant D. N. Guthrie, Aide-de-Camp.

Lieutenant *Hon.* T. C. Plunkett, Aide-de-Camp.

Lieutenant R. A. Macgeorge, Aide-de-Camp.

STATIONS OF THE REGULAR AND SPECIAL RESERVE BATTALIONS  
31 DECEMBER 1919.

Unit	Station	Date of arrival at present station	Remarks
1st Battalion ...	Makina, Mesopotamia ...	13.10.19	Embarked 15.9.19
2nd " ...	Oudenarde Barracks, Aldershot ...	27.10.19	Cadre to England 16.6.19
3rd " ...	Cambridge Barracks, Portsmouth	10.11.19	" " 5.6.19
4th " ...	Quetta, India ...	14.11.19	Embarked 21.10.19
5th (Special Reserve) Battalion	Rifle Depot, Winchester ...	1.9.19	—
6th " "	" " "	1.9.19	Demobilized in December 1918, re-formed on Rifle Depot, reverting to Peace Establishment 1.9.19

# UNITS OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE FORMED SINCE 4 AUGUST 1914 AND SUBSEQUENT DISPOSAL.

*Compiled by Mr. C. H. English, Rifle Records, Winchester.*

Designation	Date of formation	Date of proceeding overseas	Date of disbandment, amalgamation, &c.	Remarks
7th (Service) Battalion...	22.8.14	19.5.15	18.6.18	Personnel absorbed by 33rd Bn. Lond. Rgt.
8th " "	22.8.14	19.5.15	3.8.18	Disbanded
9th " "	30.8.14	21.5.15	3.8.18	"
10th " "	20.9.14	21.7.15	15.2.18	"
11th " "	20.9.14	21.7.15	30.5.19	Cadres to dispersal units
12th " "	21.9.14	21.7.15	29.5.19	
13th " "	31.10.14	30.7.15	5.5.19	
14th (Reserve) "	31.10.14	—	1.9.16	Became 19th Training Reserve Battalion
15th " "	31.10.14	—	1.9.16	" 20th "
16th (Service) "	9.7.15	7.3.16	8.6.19	Cadre to dispersal units
17th (Reserve) "	15.10.15	—	1.9.16	Became 112th Training Reserve Battalion
26th (Garrison) "	16.6.19	—	25.7.19	Personnel transferred to 20th Hants Rgt.
51st* (Graduated) "	1.11.17	31.3.19	2.3.20	Formerly 237th Infy. Bn. With Army of the Rhine
52nd* " "	1.11.17	27.2.19	4.3.20	Formerly 241st Infy. Bn. With Army of the Rhine
53rd* (Young Soldiers) Battalion	1.11.17	21.3.19	31.10.19	Formerly 18th T. Reserve
5th Provisional Company (2nd Rifle Brigade)	31.3.19	—	25.3.20	Witley Bay

\* Became "Service" Battalions 8 February 1919 on forming part of the Rhine Army.

# TRAINING RESERVE UNITS AFFILIATED TO RIFLE RECORD OFFICE AND THEIR SUBSEQUENT DISPOSAL.

Designation	Date of formation	Date of disbandment amalgamation, &c.	Remarks
16th Training Reserve Battalion	1.9.16	4.2.18	Disbanded. Formerly 14th and 15th K.R.R.C. and 11th R. Bn. Gloucester Rgt.
17th*	"	21.6.17	Became 284th Infy. Bn. and subsequently 51st K.R.R.C. 1.11.17
18th†	"	1.11.17	" 53rd (Y.S.) Bn. R. Bde.
19th	"	24.7.17	" 237th Infy. Bn. and subsequently 51st R. Bde. 1.11.17. Formerly 14th Rifle Bde.
20th	"	1.11.17	" 53rd (Y.S.) Bn. K.R.R.C. Formerly 15th R. Bde.
108th	"	15.2.18	Disbanded. Formerly 13th Res. Bn. Suffolk Regt.
109th	"	26.3.18	" 19th " " K.R.R.C.
110th	"	1.3.18	" " " 22nd "
111th	"	21.2.18	" " " 23rd "
112th	"	1.3.18	" " " 17th " Rifle Bde.

\* Personnel of 10th Border Regt. and 11th L. North Lancs. absorbed into 17th T.R. Bn., September 1, 1916.

† Personnel of 14th and 15th Res. Bns. K.R.R.C. absorbed into 18th T. Res. Bn., also 16th and 17th T.R. Bns., September 1, 1916.

ROLL OF WARRANT OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS AND RIFLEMEN WHO HAVE BEEN AWARDED SPECIAL DECORATIONS FOR GALLANT DEEDS DURING THE WAR.

FROM *London Gazettes* AND *Army Orders*.

(In continuation of Roll published in RIFLE BRIGADE CHRONICLE of 1918, pp. 271-85.)

### Bar to Distinguished Conduct Medal.

<i>Regt. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>	<i>Action for which Commended</i>
B/203252	Corpl. A/Sergt. N. Champion,* <i>D.C.M., M.M.</i>	13th Bn.	For marked gallantry and devotion to duty on 4 November 1918, near Louvignies. As signal sergeant he went forward with the advancing waves to establish communication from the front-line companies to battalion headquarters, and succeeded under very heavy fire in laying a line from the first objective to battalion headquarters. Whilst working forward with the line he noticed rifle fire coming from a house, and, proceeding there with his luesman, discovered and disarmed fifty of the enemy. His conduct during the whole operation was exemplary. ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 2 December 1919.)

\* Was awarded D.C.M. "for conspicuous Gallantry" when No. F/145 Rfn. N. Champion of the 10th Bn. K.R.R.C. (*London Gazette*, 15 April 1916.)

## Distinguished Conduct Medal.

Regt. No.	Rank and Name	Unit	Action for which Commended
50479	Rfn. A. A. Ridgwell ...	1st Bn.	For marked gallantry and devotion at the crossing of the river Ecaillo near Monchaux, on 24 October 1918. He was one of a party detailed to carry and place in position a footbridge by which the assaulting troops could cross the river. He assisted in launching the bridge, which was then found to be too short to span the river. Under heavy machine-gun fire he jumped into the river, and, with the water up to his armpits, held up the bridge while many of the assaulting troops crossed. ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 2 December 1919.)
S/16250	Corpl. G. Taylor ...	16th Bn.	Near Epehy, on 22 September 1918, he showed exceptional coolness and disregard of danger, and set a very fine example to his men. As a result of his shooting, a party of twenty-five of the enemy was completely destroyed. During an attack later on Dados Loop he was instrumental in completely silencing three enemy machine-guns which were greatly inconveniencing the consolidation by our infantry. He showed great energy throughout, and greatly assisted in the operations. ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 2 December 1919.)
B/2818	Sergt. C. Wilson ...	13th Bn.	For marked gallantry and good work on 4th November 1918, near Louvignies. He, finding himself cut off with a party of six other ranks from his company, proceeded to advance towards the objective line under intense machine-gun fire from a house on the road. In spite of their small numbers, he led a determined attack on the house, and bombed the machine gunners through the window, put the gun out of action and captured or killed the crew. Proceeding, he led his small party towards a much larger body of the enemy, and caused fifteen of them to surrender. ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 2 December 1919.)



## Distinguished Conduct Medal—continued.

<i>Regt. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>	<i>Action for which Commended</i>
2357	Sergt. P. C. Howell ...	6th Bn. and Nigeria Regt.	On 3 August 1918, when proceeding to the town of Gumlanja, was attacked, and had to order his escort to open fire in self defence. In the fighting that ensued it is estimated that seven natives were killed and four wounded. ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 22 December 1919.)
Z/2822	Sergt. W. A. Balehin ...	13th Bn.	For conspicuous gallantry and devotion to duty on 8 October 1918, near Vancelles. Whilst in charge of a tank escort, he personally guided the tank to its objective, walking in front of it under heavy shelling and machine-gun fire, and although severely wounded continued to direct it until the objective was reached. ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 10 January 1920.)
318218	Rfn. H. Cutting ...	? Bn. Posted 1/5 Lond. Regt.	During the operations on 6 November 1918, near Angreau, he showed marked gallantry and initiative. He successfully tackled a machine-gun, which held up the advance, and captured the garrison of nine. He was completely alone when he carried out this important work, his section all having become casualties. ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 10 January 1920.)
1402	Corpl. H. Doman ...	4th Bn. Atchd. 3rd Divl. Sig. Coy.	For conspicuous gallantry and devotion to duty. When the brigade centre advanced he brought his cable wagon up through the enemy's barrage, and then went forward with it across the open and in full view of the enemy to open up a new station. He has previously done fine work. ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 10 January 1920.)
Z/1011	Corpl. H. Molineaux ...	1st Bn.	On 1 November 1918, near Preseau, he handled his platoon with the greatest coolness, and at a point where the advance was in danger of being held up by a hostile machine-gun he led a party round the flank and rushed the post, killing four of the garrison. He also did invaluable work in helping to reorganize the line during an enemy counter-attack. ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 10 January 1920.)

S/14423	Rfn. L. Swanwick ...	...	3rd Bn.	For most conspicuous gallantry and pluck on 11 October 1918, during the attack on St. Aubert. He held on to a post single-handed for eleven hours after all the remainder of his post had been hit, during the last six of which, owing to the heavy machine-gun fire, it was impossible to visit him. He was wounded in this post which he had dug himself within 200 yards of an enemy machine-gun post ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 10 January 1920).
S/28769	Rfn. W. Bryant ...	...	1st Bn.	For marked courage during the attack on the village of Preseau on 1 November 1918. When his section was held up by machine-gun fire he personally rushed the gun from a flank, capturing it and killing four of the enemy gunners. Later on he captured twenty prisoners. He led his section splendidly throughout the day, at the end of which he had captured fifty prisoners.
3272	Coy.-Sgt.-Major G. Bishop ...	...	13th Bn.	For conspicuous devotion to duty throughout the period 16-17 September to 11 November 1918. As battalion musketry instructor he has consistently shown ability and keenness, which have been of the utmost value to his battalion. In action his gallantry has always been a splendid example to the men, and on several occasions his coolness and practical initiative have assisted in restoring a difficult situation ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 11 March 1920).
565	Rfn. F. Harvey ...	...	3rd Bn.	He did excellent work in guiding ration and ammunition limbers to battalion headquarters. Also on 24 March 1918, at Boves, when two horses were killed he went back and obtained two fresh horses, thus saving the limber with Lewis-guns. At St. Aubert under very heavy shell fire his gallantry and initiative were again conspicuous ( <i>London Gazette</i> , 11 March 1920.)
52173	Coy.-Sgt.-Major M. A. Marriott	M. A. Marriott	7th Bn. att. 33rd Lond. Regt.	For conspicuous gallantry and devotion to duty over a long period. On many occasions during the recent fighting his coolness and leadership have been beyond all praise. Unflinching in his devotion to duty at all times, he has always maintained the highest standard of conduct and has inspired all ranks by his fine example.

## Distinguished Conduct Medal—continued.

Regtl. No.	Rank and Name	Unit	Action for which Commended
Z/1704	Sergt. A. E. Montgomery ...	13th Bn.	<p>For gallantry and devotion to duty throughout the period midnight 16-17 September 1918 to 11 November 1918. Throughout the advance he showed great initiative and always set a splendid example to the men of his platoon. On 4 November, near Louvignies, he collected a party of men from his own and other companies, reorganized them and led them gallantly forward to the objective (<i>London Gazette</i>, 11 March 1920).</p>
S/15384	Corpl. J. H. Topp ...	3rd Bn.	<p>By his courage and example in action he has contributed much to the high efficiency attained by his Lewis-gun section. His work at all times has been excellent (<i>London Gazette</i>, 11 March 1920).</p>

**Military Cross.**

<i>Regtl. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>
5262	Regtl. Sergt.-Major W. G. Lawrence	1st Bn.
9703	Coy. Sergt.-Major T. U. Selway ...	1st Bn.

**Bar to Military Medal.**

<i>Regtl. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>
S/20910	Corpl. A. Cornwell ... ..	1st Bn.
B/203532	Rfn. A. Sheard ... ..	1st Bn.
4080 (?)	Sergt. A. E. (?) Smith ... ..	1st Bn.
B/201668	Rfn. (Lance-Corpl.) A. Bourne ...	12th Bn.

(M.M. Gazetted 6 August 1918)

**Military Medal.**

<i>Regtl. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>
7705	Corpl. G. Cobb ... ..	1st Bn.
S/87771	Corpl. A. E. Morris ... ..	1st Bn.
6170	Coy. Sergt.-Major W. Goode ...	1st Bn.
Z/1803	A/Corpl. V. McGlyn ... ..	1st Bn.
166	Rfn. A. Playle ... ..	1st Bn.
	Rfn. Elliott ... ..	1st Bn.
	A/Corpl. French ... ..	1st Bn.
1164	Sergt. R. Mainey ... ..	1st Bn.
17675	Rfn. W. H. Evans ... ..	1st Bn.
49260	Rfn. G. Horner ... ..	1st Bn.
49308	Rfn. A. Hastings ... ..	1st Bn.
B/98	Sergt. S. Spiers ... ..	1st Bn.
	Coy. Sergt.-Major Payne ... ..	1st Bn.
S/1739	Rfn. H. Fairweather ... ..	3rd Bn.
5562	Sergt. F. Haybyrne ... ..	4th Bn.
7522	Rfn. A. C. Fielder ... ..	1st Bn.
S/1747	Rfn. M. Manon ... ..	12th Bn.
4821	Rfn. J. W. Probert ... ..	1st Bn.
S/18546	Rfn. F. Spicer ... ..	8th Bn.
B/200876	Rfn. E. Taylor ... ..	8th Bn.
S/22327	Rfn. G. W. Shepherd ... ..	9th Bn.
9606	Rfn. (L/Corpl.) A. W. Woodhouse	2nd Bn.

**Meritorious Service Medal.**

<i>Regtl. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>
S/2551	Regtl. Qmr.-Sergt. P. C. Catley ...	12th Bn.
B/2113	Regtl. Qmr.-Sergt. E. Jones ...	7th Bn.
7477	Coy. Sergt.-Major J. P. Wood ...	4th Bn.
S/26719	Rfn. (A/Corpl.) W. R. Haughton...	4th Bn.
28	Coy. Sergt.-Major (A/Sergt.-Major) C. E. Hilliard ...	5th Bn.
S/21495	Sergt. W. P. C. Bradish ...	5th Bn.
2398	Rfn. (L/Corpl.) A. H. Elphick ...	2nd Bn.
2399	Coy. Qmr.-Sergt. R. Conaran ...	5th (No. 1 Spec. Coy. Russia)

The following have been brought to the notice of the Secretary of State for War, for valuable services rendered whilst interned Prisoners of War.

<i>Regtl. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>
7473	Coy. Sergt.-Maj. (T/Regt. Sergt.- Maj.) A. Charlton ...	7th Bn.
889	Rfn. G. Ellis ...	1st Bn.
970	Rfn. J. Ford ...	1st Bn.
S/4409	Corpl. (A/L/Sergt.) F. R. Freer ...	7th Bn.
S/3097	Corpl. A. E. Cilinger ...	12th Bn.
S/31395	Rfn. H. Millan ...	3rd Bn.
2150	Rfn. J. Punter ...	1st Bn.
140	Rfn. A/L/Corpl. C. W. Turner ...	1st Bn.

**Foreign Decorations.**  
**"Croix de Guerre."**

<i>Regtl. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>
Z/1563	Rfn. Simeon Whitehouse... ..	4th Bn.

**Medaille d'Honneur avec Glaives en Argent.**

<i>Regtl. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>
5415	Coy.-Sergt.-Maj. (Temp. Regt.- Sergt.-Maj.) W. Warren ...	8th Bn.

**Médaille d'Honneur avec Glaives en Bronze.**

<i>Regtl. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>
B/203759	Rfn. J. Elderfield ... ..	2nd Bn.
S/32737	Rfn. C. R. Stiff ... ..	11th Bn.

**Order of St. Sava, Silver Medal for Valour, Serbia.**

<i>Regtl. No.</i>	<i>Rank and Name</i>	<i>Unit</i>
S/11827	Rfn. S. A. Bolton ... ..	4th Bn.
1837	Rfn. (A/Qmr.-Sergt.) G. Godman	4th Bn.

**ERRATA AND ADDENDA.**

Major R. T. Fellowes, D.S.O., M.C., has very kindly sent us the following corrections to sundry rolls which were published in the *CHRONICLE* for 1918.

**ERRATA AND ADDENDA.****RIFLE BRIGADE CHRONICLE, 1918.**

- P. 259. Officers killed, etc., in 1st Bn. in 1917 were 13 not 12 making total 128 not 127.
- P. 260. Officers killed, etc., in 1st Bn. in 1918 were 18 not 7, making total 65 not 54.
- P. 261. Similar corrections to first table for 1st Bn. total.
- P. 337. Capt. H. S. C. Peyton, *M.C.*, was killed with 2nd Bn. not 1st Bn.
- P. 338. For "Strafford, T/Lt. L., 20th Bn.," read Stratford, T/Lt. L., 1st Bn.
- P. 339. T/2nd Lt. J. H. Ainley was killed with 1st Bn. not 2nd Bn. (attd. 13 R. Scots.).
- P. 339. Capt. F. W. L. Gull was not killed with 1st Bn., but with a Service Battalion.
- P. 339. 2nd Lt. E. C. Garton was killed with 1st Bn., not 5th Bn.
- P. 339. Add Glover, Lt. G. W., *D.S.O.*, 30 August, 1st Bn.
- P. 340. Lt. W. C. Pickering was killed on 30 August, not 11 October.
- P. 292. No. 985 Rfn. A. E. Robbins belonged to 1st Bn., not 4th Bn.



---

# **Some Regimental Notes.**

BY  
COLONEL W. VERNER.

---

•



## SOME REGIMENTAL NOTES.

---

### **The Colonels Commandant.**

ALTHOUGH these notes primarily deal with events during the year 1919, it may not be out of place to allude here to a matter which has occurred during the preparation of the present volume.

An Order has been issued in which it is laid down that, in future, no Officer shall hold the post of Colonel or Colonel Commandant of a Regiment or Battalion after attaining the age of 70. At the same time the duties of these Officers have been extended and they are to be called upon to take a more active share in the interests and well-being of their Corps than has hitherto been the case. If this order is logically carried out and due attention be paid by the authorities to any reasonable representations of the newly-appointed Colonels Commandant, nothing but good can follow. It is notorious that, with a few rare exceptions, some of those holding such posts in the past have not been greatly overworked and it has been said with some truth that since they were invested with no powers they could effect but little. On the other hand it has been clearly demonstrated that some Colonels Commandant, had in one way or another, entirely lost touch of their Battalions.

Although the Order did not call upon Officers already holding these posts to resign in favour of younger and more active men, its publication naturally caused considerable heart-searchings among those

whom it immediately affected and it was not unamusing to hear the matter freely discussed among them at the Military Clubs, the general upshot being that the relatively junior Officers decided that they would wait and see what the more senior Officers did before resigning their posts ; thus securing their strategic retreat.

---

**Major-General Sir L. V. Swaine, K.C.B.**

FIRST among those who faced the situation was our late Senior Colonel Commandant Sir L. V. Swaine who, prompted as ever by his desire to do all in his power to promote the well-being of the Regiment and entirely irrespective of his own private feelings, decided to send in his resignation. Those who had the good fortune to serve with General Swaine and more especially during the years when he commanded a Battalion and who know how, since he has been one of our Colonel Commandants, he has worked indefatigably to promote the interests of the Rifle Brigade and to keep himself in touch with the Regiment, will best realize what a wrench it was for him to take this step. His reasons were of course apparent to all, for he felt that so long as he remained on, it would prevent any of those junior to him from resigning. Also that on the assumption that the new order of things would be of advantage to the Regiment, it was obvious that it should come into force with the least possible delay.

---

**Field-Marshal Sir Henry H. Wilson, Bart.**

It was not long before Sir Leopold Swaine's chivalrous action was shown to have been thoroughly well justified, for in the *London Gazette* a few weeks

later it was announced that Field-Marshal Sir Henry H. Wilson had been appointed Colonel Commandant in Sir Leopold Swaine's place.

All Riflemen who have watched with pride Sir Henry Wilson's career and splendid services, will be delighted to welcome him back to the Regiment as a Colonel Commandant. Sir Henry is only 56 so it will be many years before he will be called upon to make way for a younger man.

We all congratulate Sir Henry Wilson—and ourselves!

---

### **The Military Rackets Championship, 1920.**

THE fine performance of Officers of the Regiment at the Military Rackets Tournament early in 1920 is surely worthy of being placed on record in the Regimental CHRONICLE. The Editor, aware of his limitations, at the time applied to several Officers of the Regiment of various ranks, from that of Colonel Commandant downwards, who are (or were) acknowledged experts at "ball games" and asked that an account should be sent him.

Unfortunately his appeal has, so far, met with no success; Since the Racket games were played in March there is yet time to give a proper account of them among the "Sports and Pastimes" in the CHRONICLE issued in 1921.

The Editor will be pleased to send to anybody who will undertake this task, cuttings from the *Times* describing the various games.

---

### Some Interesting Photographs.

MAJOR W. V. L. PRESCOTT-WESTCAR, D.S.O., has sent the Editor some fine photographs of considerable interest of the Khyber Pass, where he has been serving with the 8th Battalion Machine Gun Corps during the year 1919 and later.

The first of these is taken from Kafirkote overlooking the Khargali Ridge and shows the scene of the action of 11 May 1919.

Bagh Springs which are close to Landi Khana and about one and a half miles *inside* of our frontier, lie in the woods which appear in the centre of this photograph and it was to get possession of these that the action was fought.

The second photograph gives the view of the Khyber Pass as seen from the exit of the gorge of Ali Masjid, looking towards Afghanistan.

It has been unfortunately impossible to reproduce these excellent photographs in the CHRONICLE for several reasons, not the least important being that they would lose much of their value if reduced to the small size of a plate. The Editor has however taken steps to have them preserved (with other similar large photographs) so that when the Memorial Hall for the Regiment takes definite shape, they may be sent there, with other articles of Regimental interest and added to the collection of pictures and photographs.

They will, of course, be of exceptional interest to those old Riflemen who served in the Afghanistan Expedition in 1879.

---

### Contributions to the "Chronicle."

THE Editor tenders his best thanks to the 1st Battalion in Mesopotamia and also to the 4th Battalion at Quetta for various contributions sent to him for

publication in the CHRONICLE. Among those sent by the 4th Battalion were accounts of shooting, with many photographs. He regrets, once again, it has been absolutely impossible to reproduce these, for reasons already given.

---

### Increased Cost of "Chronicle."

IT may be of interest to the readers of the CHRONICLE to learn that, owing to the enormous advances in the cost of printing and publishing (mainly due to the rise in wages and the cost of paper), matter which had hitherto only cost £200 to publish, last year cost over £500. The effects of this are very far-reaching as the following will show.

For many years the annual subscription to the CHRONICLE was 10s. from each officer.

The average cost of production of 1,000 copies averaged (roughly) £200 and thus it was possible, after reserving some 300 to 400 copies for subscribers and purchasers, to issue the bulk of the remaining copies to N.C.O.s and men at 3s. 6d. to 2s. 6d. per copy, the net loss of this proceeding being covered by the Officers' subscriptions. In other words, it was possible within the limits of sound finance, for the Editor to issue a large number of copies to N.C.O.s and Riflemen at about *half the cost price*. Thus, every Officer who subscribed, obtained for his subscription a copy for himself and further enabled the Editor to issue *two* copies (and sometimes *three* copies) to the Battalions at the reduced price. The great increase in the cost of publishing due to war conditions completely upset this scheme which has worked so admirably ever since the first issue of the CHRONICLE in 1890—now thirty years.

Thus it came about that the 1918 issue actually *cost* 10s. per copy and hence the issue of it at a reduced rate became a very difficult matter.

Fortunately, when the Rifle Brigade Club was re-organized some years ago the Committee took over the financing of the CHRONICLE, the annual subscription hitherto paid being merged in the annual Club subscription.

Hence when difficulties arose, the Committee were in a position to deal with this matter and by increasing the annual subscription of Officers have striven to carry on the old system of supplying our Riflemen with copies at a reduced price.

The Editor wishes to lay particular emphasis on this point, since he has received several letters from Officers objecting to the recent increase to the Club subscription. He feels confident that if such objectors would read this notice, they would realize that the increase is absolutely justified, since it will enable us to place within the reach of our Riflemen, the whole story of the glorious services of the Regiment during the Great War.

---

#### **Officers' Association.**

THE Rifle Brigade Club has joined the Officers' Association and pays an annual subscription of ten guineas.

---

#### **Addresses of Members of the Club.**

ONCE again the Editor calls attention to the trouble and expense caused by Members of the Club not notifying changes of address to the Secretary of the Club.

Thus fourteen CHRONICLES for 1918 sent to

addresses given were returned as "gone away" or "not known." In these times of heavy postal charges and increased cost of packing, etc., it is obviously unfair to saddle the CHRONICLE with double charges for such issues.

He also appeals to Members of the Club not to give the addresses of their Clubs or Army Agents as the places whither they wish CHRONICLES to be sent.

Several Clubs have refused to accept them on the plea that they had no available space for twenty or more CHRONICLES.

With regard to Army Agents. On several occasions copies thus sent have been received and "signed for" by the Agents and reported by them as having been duly forwarded, but have never arrived.

The usual outcome of this is much correspondence and a claim for a new volume to be sent *gratis*!

It is obvious that such claims are hardly fair on CHRONICLE funds.

---

### A Final Appeal.

THE Editor, probably for the last time in his life, once again makes an appeal to all who may wish to assist the CHRONICLE in the future to try to conform with the few simple and universal rules for sending articles to the Editor for publication.

These rules can be found at the end of any of the CHRONICLES issued and have been published and re-published annually, now for thirty years, with complete non-success. They are, briefly:—

- (1) Write on *one side* of the paper.
- (2) Leave a *good margin* on left hand side.
- (3) Write proper names in block capitals (**D A M**).

The Editor has been assured repeatedly that "everybody knows these" and that it is "only thoughtless young fellows who ignore these rules."

To these he would reply that, in the present issue of the CHRONICLE he has had his whole work actually "held up" several times owing to the wilful disregard of some of his contributors to attend to these simple points and thus save him much unnecessary work and the printers endless corrections. So far from the culprits being ingenuous 2nd Lieutenants or Temporary or Reserve Officers the principal culprits recently have been Regular Officers who had attained field rank and acted as Brigadiers!

In some cases in this issue, he has had it under consideration whether it would not be well to have the original documents, as received by him for decipherment, framed and presented to the Rifle Brigade Museum as curiosities and for the information and guidance of future writers to our Regimental CHRONICLE.

---





---

## Obituary, 1919.

---

## OBITUARY, 1919.

---

### MAJOR-GENERAL A. A. A. KINLOCH, C.B.

ALEXANDER ANGUS AIRLIE KINLOCH of Logie, Kirriemuir, Forfarshire, was the eldest son of Colonel John Grant Kinloch of Logie and Kilrie and was born 27 December 1838. He was educated at the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich, and was gazetted to the Regiment 22 November 1855, became Lieutenant 24 September 1858 and on 8 May 1870 was promoted Captain. He served in India with the Regiment and on the Staff and became famous as a pursuer of large game. Upon the 3rd Battalion being ordered home he exchanged on 31 October 1871, into the 3rd Battalion 60th, which relieved the Rifle Brigade at Aden. He served with the 60th in the war in Afghanistan, 1878-80, receiving the medal and two clasps and Brevets of Major and Lieutenant-Colonel. He commanded, first the 2nd and subsequently, the 4th Battalions of the 60th between 1886-1890 and served as a Brigadier-General in India from 1890 to 1895, receiving the medal and clasp for "Relief of Chritral" and a C.B. He retired on 15 April 1896 with the Honorary rank of Major-General granted him for his services.

In 1869 he published his famous book on "Large Game Shooting in Thibet and the North-West," which is viewed as a classic by all big game sportsmen and of which a second edition appeared in 1876.

In 1885 he brought out another volume "Large

Game Shooting in Thibet, the Himalayas and Northern and Central India.

He died at Bray Lodge, Bray, Berkshire, on 17 January 1919, aged 80.

---

**M. MAJOR C. F. BLACKETT.**

CHARLES FRANCIS BLACKETT was the second son of Sir Edward Blackett, sixth baronet, of Matfen Hall, Corbridge, Northumberland and was born 6 January 1841. He was gazetted to the Regiment on 30 March 1858, during the Indian Mutiny. Later in that year he was sent out overland to India and joined the 2nd Battalion, receiving the medal. He was promoted Lieutenant 10 May 1861 and Captain 13 April 1872 and was placed on half-pay, 8 December 1877 with the honorary rank of Major. He retired on 6 July 1881. He died at Bath on 3 February 1919.

---

**C.M. COLONEL JOHN CLERK, C.S.I., C.V.O.**

JOHN CLERK was the younger son of Sir George Russell Clerk (a famous Indian Official at one time permanent Under Secretary of State for India) and a brother of General Sir Godfrey Clerk who served in the Rifle Brigade from 1857 to 1880 and was a Colonel Commandant.

He was born in 1837 and was gazetted on 6 June 1854 to the 6th Regiment and appointed to the Rifle Brigade on 25 December of the same year.

He served in the Crimea, and was present at the Battle of the Alma and throughout the Siege of

Sebastopol and received the medal with four clasps and the Turkish medal.

On 17 December 1858 he was promoted Captain. He exchanged into the 4th Dragoon Guards 16 October 1863 and, two years later, retired from the Army on 20 October 1865. He then entered the Political Service in India and was Guardian to the Nizam of Hyderabad from 1874 to 1876. On his return to England he was made an extra Equerry to Queen Victoria and to the Duke of Saxe-Coburg.

From 1885 to 1889 he was Comptroller and Treasurer to Princess Henry of Battenberg. He died at Eastbourne on 1 March 1919 aged 82.

---

### C. E. PARKE, Esq.

CHARLES ETHELSTON PARKE was the eldest son of Charles Joseph Parke, Esq., of Henbury House, Wimborne and was born 3 June 1850. He was educated at Eton and was gazetted an Ensign in the 68th Light Infantry on 20 May 1868. He was promoted Lieutenant in that Regiment on 27 October 1871 and exchanged into the Rifle Brigade on 14 February 1872.

He served with the 2nd Battalion in the Ashantee Expedition of 1873-74 receiving the medal and clasp. For some time he was A.D.C. to his uncle, General Sir W. Parke at Dover and Aldershot. He retired from the Service 23 May 1877.

He died at Wimborne on 12 April 1919 aged 69.

---

## SURGEON-MAJOR G. A. HUTTON.

GEORGE ALLAN HUTTON was born in 1830 and was gazetted as Assistant Surgeon on the Medical Staff of the Army on 23 June 1854 and was promoted to Surgeon on 2 October 1866 and Surgeon-Major the *same* day.

On 21 April 1870 he was appointed as Surgeon-Major in the Rifle Brigade and served with it till 3 September 1874. During his twenty years in the Army he served in South Africa, Canada and the West Indies. After leaving the Army he was, in 1880 appointed one of the first Official Examiners of the recently formed St. John Ambulance Associations and worked for the cause with extraordinary vigour amid the populous districts of Middlesborough and Cleveland. Such was his energy that upon the visit of the late King Edward and Queen Alexandra (then Prince and Princess of Wales) over 1,000 qualified Ambulance Men were paraded.

Surgeon-Major Hutton then directed his attention to the railway employees of the North Eastern Railway and with equally good results. Following on this railway work he, with the assistance of Dr. Lightfoot, then Bishop of Durham, worked up the Ambulance men of Northumberland and Durham with extraordinary success.

In 1890 Lord Wolseley inspected 1,600 Ambulance Men in the Midlands at Woollaton Park and in his speech highly praised Surgeon-Major Hutton for "the praiseworthy and patriotic spirit" and "the most admirable way in which he had gone through this country," raising and training men for ambulance work.

At the conclusion of the parade Lord Wolseley said "This Ambulance Corps will I feel be the greatest possible service to the Army and we shall look to the

St. John Ambulance Association to help us in our hospitals in a National difficulty. The small Corps we have in the Army would not be able to do the work."

In May 1893 Surgeon-Major Hutton was able to take 400 Ambulance Men and a contingent of qualified Women Nurses of the St. John Ambulance Association to Windsor for inspection by Queen Victoria and was honoured by Her Majesty's high praise.

During the South African War Lord Wolseley's prediction was fulfilled and no less than 2,000 Ambulance Men served in the Hospitals and Hospital Ships.

From 1892 to 1902 Surgeon-Major Hutton was Organizing Commissioner of the St. John Ambulance Association.

In 1904 he read a paper before the British Medical Association held at Oxford to a section devoted to Navy and Army Ambulance work under the Presidency of Surgeon-Major-General Bradshaw, C.B., a well-known former Medical Officer in the Rifle Brigade.

Surgeon-Major Hutton was in his later years, from 1912 onwards, Hon. Organizing Commissioner of St. John Ambulance Association and lived for many years at Leamington.

The immense value of his work has been demonstrated during the Great War. He died at Leamington on 21 April 1919 in his 90th year.

---

#### COLONEL A. H. S. MONTGOMERY.

ARTHUR HILLS SANDYS MONTGOMERY was the second son of Arthur Hill Montgomery, Esq., of Tyrella, Co. Down and of Lady Matilda Anne Parker, second daughter of the fifth Earl of Macclesfield.

He was born 27 October 1841 and was educated at Cheltenham College and was gazetted to the Regiment 18 January 1861 joining the 1st Battalion. He was promoted to Lieutenant 5 August 1865, and later on was appointed Adjutant.

He served with the 1st Battalion in Canada and was with it in the Fenian raids of 1866 and 1870 for which he was granted the Canadian medal and two clasps.

He was promoted Captain, 23 April 1873 and Major 1 July 1881. On 16 October 1889, under the Royal Warrant regulating the age limit he, being then a Major in the 2nd Battalion at Dover, was placed on half-pay and promoted to Lieutenant-Colonel. Two years later he was appointed to command the Provisional Battalion at that time formed at Shorncliffe, a post he held for four years, when he was promoted to a Brevet Colonelcy. He retired from the Service 27 October 1896.

He was a very keen and energetic supporter of everything to do with the Rifle Brigade to an extent that very few of his brother officers were aware. He threw his whole heart into such things as the Rifleman's Aid Society and, as the annual reports will show, from time to time was most generous in his aid to that Institution. When the CHRONICLE was started he was among its strongest advocates and when in its early days financial difficulties arose, he was one of those who came forward to help the Editor out of his troubles.

From time to time during the last twenty-five years he has acted similarly whenever any help was required to further any Regimental scheme, his only proviso being that his name should not appear.

As an example of his practical assistance, some



years ago when at the Annual Greenjackets' Meeting at Winchester he noted that the set of Regimental CHRONICLES at the Mess was incomplete. Shortly after the Editor received £5 from him with a request that he should make good the missing copies and keep them *complete* so long as there was any money left.

In 1911, he contributed an amusing article to the CHRONICLE describing "Life with the 1st Battalion in Canada." It may be mentioned here that when, in the summer of 1869, H.R.H. Prince Arthur (now F.M. The Duke of Connaught, our Colonel-in-Chief) was appointed a Lieutenant in the Rifle Brigade, it fell to Montgomery, as Adjutant, to put the Prince through his Recruit Officer's course of drill and instruction, in other words to train him as a Rifleman, a fact which he always mentioned with much gratification.

When the question of a Memorial to Montgomery arose, H.R.H. in his reply to the Editor alluded to this incident in his career and spoke of him with great sympathy and affection.

After leaving the Service Colonel Montgomery lived at Folkestone. In the spring of 1919 he had some heart trouble and after a month's very sad illness, died at his residence on 21 June aged 77.

He was buried in the Cemetery near Radnor Park, Folkestone. Some six months later it came to the knowledge of the Editor that no stone had been placed to mark his grave. He thereupon obtained permission to put up a Memorial headstone and wrote to some forty of Montgomery's old comrades. The Editor received the keenest support and in fact declined subscriptions from several officers who, although they had never served with Colonel Montgomery, were anxious to do honour to his memory, albeit not "Old Comrades."

The Epitaph on the Headstone which has met with widespread approval from all who knew "Old Mac" (by which name he was so well known) runs as follows:—

"A GOOD RIFLE MAN."

"ERECTED BY SOME OF HIS OLD COMRADES."

---

### CAPTAIN C. H. G. M. CLARKE, M.V.O.

CHARLES HENRY GEOFFREY MANSFIELD CLARKE was the only son of General Sir Charles Mansfield Clarke, Bart., G.C.B., G.C.V.O., and was born in 1873.

He was gazetted to the Regiment 15 February 1893 and joined the 2nd Battalion in Dublin. He was promoted Lieutenant 30 August 1895 and served with the 2nd Battalion in the second Nile Expedition of 1898 receiving the medal and the Khedive's medal. Later he served in the Boer War.

On 7 April 1900 he was promoted Captain. He served as A.D.C. to the Major-General Commanding in Gibraltar in 1901-02 and later, as A.D.C. to his father when Governor of Malta in 1903-07. He retired from the Service in 1908 but on the outbreak of the War joined the Reserve Battalion and served with it at Sheppey. He died on 27 July at Wavenden Manor, Woburn Sands, after only a few days' illness, aged 46.

---

### CAPTAIN A. C. CAMPBELL.

ARTHUR CHARLES CAMPBELL was the fifth and youngest son of Colonel George Henry Frederick Campbell and was born in 1857 and was gazetted to

the 77th Regiment on 30 January 1878. He was appointed to the Rifle Brigade on 29 June of the same year and joined the 2nd Battalion at Gibraltar. He was promoted Lieutenant 29 September 1880 and Captain 7 May 1887 and retired from the Service 9 April 1890.

He died at 30 Clarges Street, S.W., on 8 September 1919 when in his 63rd year.

---

**Memorial Headstone  
to the late Colonel Arthur Montgomery.**

**ROLL OF SUBSCRIBERS.**

F.M. H.R.H. The Duke of Connaught, Colonel-in-Chief.

Major-General C. R. H. Nicholl.  
Lieutenant-Colonel H. M. Moorsom.  
Major-General C. W. Robinson.  
Colonel G. E. Boyle.  
Major-General Sir L. V. Swaine.  
The Viscount Dillon.  
Major A. R. Hopwood.  
General Hon. Sir N. G. Lyttelton.  
Colonel Sir A. FitzGeorge.  
Major E. A. Burnell-Milnes.  
Major V. Bagot.  
Colonel J. A. Fergusson.  
Major-General Sir F. Howard.  
Lieutenant-Colonel R. F. Meysey-Thompson.  
Henry Dutton, Esq.  
Major-General Sir R. B. Lane.  
Lieutenant-Colonel C. R. Prideaux-Brune.  
Colonel C. H. B. Norcott.  
Captain V. N. Ward.  
Major-General W. R. Kenyon-Slaney.  
Captain H. V. Wingfield-Stratford.  
Major J. P. Wegg-Prosser.  
Captain A. F. Macmillan Scott.  
Colonel W. Verner.  
Colonel C. Lamb.  
Brigadier-General G. Cockburn.  
Colonel G. F. Leslie.  
Lieutenant-General Sir H. F. M. Wilson.  
Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. W. Coke.  
Captain Hon. A. Somerset.  
Captain M. Weyland.  
Colonel A. E. Jenkins.  
Brigadier-General L. L. Nicol.  
Major-General Sir V. Couper.  
H. J. W. Drummond, Esq.  
Major H. A. Fyers.  
Brigadier-General The Earl of Lucan.  
Lieutenant-General Sir W. N. Congreve.  
Captain F. A. Irby.

## NOTICE TO CORRESPONDENTS.

1. THE Editor requests that all contributions for the CHRONICLE for 1920 may be posted to him *as soon as possible*.

2. All communications to be written on *one side only* of the paper, leaving a *wide margin*.

All names of persons and foreign places to be written in block Roman type, thus: **RHINE**, care being taken to spell such names correctly.

All abbreviations which may lead to confusion should be *avoided*, e.g. "Cpt." and "Cpl." for "Captain" and "Corporal."

Dates should be written simply, thus: "1 April" *not* "April the 1st."

3. When sending photographs for reproduction, the following information should be written *legibly* in pencil on the back of each one:—

(a) Number of Battalion (if any).

(b) Title of subject (name, place, and date).

(c) If a group, rank and names of individuals.

4. When sending maps for reproduction—

(1) They should be drawn about one-third larger than the size required for the CHRONICLE.

(2) The north point and an *adequate* scale should be given.

(3) The names of places, &c., should be written *legibly*, so as to admit of the process of reduction.

5. All Contributions to be sent to

COLONEL WILLOUGHBY VERNER,

Editor, RIFLE BRIGADE CHRONICLE,

c/o Messrs. Bale, Sons & Danielsson, Ltd.,

83-91, Great Titchfield Street,

Oxford Street,

London, W. 1.

*Note.*—Neglect of the preceding simple rules causes much extra labour and serious waste of time to the Editor, whose work on the *Regimental History* has hitherto been greatly retarded. Also heavy extra cost is thrown on the CHRONICLE owing to the great amount of corrections rendered necessary. Maps sent often have to be *entirely* re-drawn.





## LIST OF CONTRIBUTORS.

VOLS. XXI.—XXX. (Years 1910—1919.)

	PAGE	VOL.
A'COURT-REPPINGTON, C., Lost Legions, The Old Army ..	3 ..	1918
Alldridge, J. H., Summary of Services, &c., of 2nd Battalion during its Foreign Tour of Service, 1897-1914 ..	86 ..	1914
— Summary of Services of 2nd Battalion in France and Belgium, November 1914 to November 1918 ..	212 ..	1919
BODEN, A. D., The Scarteen Hounds .. ..	156 ..	1912
Bradshaw, A. F., To India in 1857 with the 2nd Battalion ..	57 ..	1910
Bridgeman, R. O., War Records, Regular Battalions, 1914 ..	41 ..	1916
— War Records, Regular Battalions, 1915 .. ..	10 ..	1918
COOKE, B. H., The Staff College, Quetta .. ..	81 ..	1910
Costin, H. J., Bolivian Boundary Commission (I) .. ..	122 ..	1910
— Bolivian Boundary Commission (II) .. ..	169 ..	1911
— Bolivian Boundary Commission (III) .. ..	164 ..	1913
DAVIES, W. H., At the Tomb of the Founder of the Rifle Corps — A Regimental Roll, 1914-15 .. ..	105 ..	1912
Dickinson, W., With the King's African Rifles .. ..	222 ..	1918
.. ..	96 ..	1912
FORTESCUE, Hon. J. W., History and Campaigns of the Rifle Brigade, Part I., 1800-1809 .. ..	144 ..	1912
GORELL, Lord, "John," A True Record .. ..	8 ..	1917
Green-Wilkinson, L. F., Vancouver Island, 1912 .. ..	69 ..	1912
Grogan, Sir E., Some Notes on the South American Republics ..	82 ..	1911
HODSON, E., Roll of Veterans of the 1st Battalion Rifle Brigade at Hamilton, Canada, 1911 .. ..	175 ..	1911
LIVERPOOL, Earl of, New Zealand in 1913 .. ..	72 ..	1913
MILLER, G., Some Reminiscences of Mr. William Miller, Bandmaster of the 1st Battalion Rifle Brigade, 1842-80 ..	70 ..	1915
Montgomery, A., Reminiscences of Service in Canada with the 1st Battalion, 1862-70 .. ..	89 ..	1911
Morrish, W., Some Early Regimental Experiences .. ..	80 ..	1913
PALEY, G., The Canadian Militia in 1911 .. ..	57 ..	1911
Parkyn, R. G., Short History of the Rifle Brigade .. ..	36 ..	1917
— War Records, "Service" Battalions, 1915 .. ..	111 ..	1918
Prittie, Hon. F. R. D., The South-Western Uganda Boundaries, 1911-12 .. ..	59 ..	1912
SHAW, P., Extracts from Letters from the Crimea, 1854-56 ..	57 ..	1913
THESIGER, G. H., A Journey in East Africa, 1911-12.. ..	81 ..	1912
WALLACE, N. W., The Greenjackets' Club, Its Origin and Progress .. ..	167 ..	1910



	PAGE	VOL.
VERNER, W.		
— "1810" .. .. .	65 ..	1910
— Boyd Alexander .. .. .	43 ..	1910
— Medals Awarded to Edward Costello .. .. .	126 ..	1910
— Pyrenees .. .. .	86 ..	1910
— Twenty-One Years of THE RIFLE BRIGADE CHRONICLE ..	133 ..	1910
— "1811" .. .. .	43 ..	1911
— Regimental Trophies and Relics .. .. .	118 ..	1911
— Rifle Brigade Memorials in Westminster Abbey ..	127 ..	1911
— "1812" .. .. .	42 ..	1912
— "1813" .. .. .	43 ..	1913
— Badajoz Revisited .. .. .	62 ..	1913
— The Fight at the Bridge of Vera .. .. .	113 ..	1913
— Sir John Moore Memorial .. .. .	109 ..	1913
— "1814" .. .. .	44 ..	1914
— The Evolution of the Rifle .. .. .	90 ..	1914
— "1815" .. .. .	41 ..	1915
— Brigadier-General Sir John Gough, V.C. .. .. .	67 ..	1915
— One of "His Majesty's Rifle Corps" .. .. .	76 ..	1915
— "Lance" Rank <i>versus</i> "Acting" Rank .. .. .	128 ..	1916
— Medals of Edward Costello .. .. .	139 ..	1916
— Memoir of Lieutenant-Colonel Jonathan Leach, C.B., 95th Rifle Corps and Rifle Brigade .. .. .	2 ..	1917
— Some Obscure Passages in the Life of Major-General Robert Craufurd .. .. .	16 ..	1917
— "Commemorative Banners" Mons to Ypres, 1914 ..	40 ..	1917
— History and Campaigns of The Rifle Brigade, Part II., (1809-1813) .. .. .	218 ..	1919
— A Short Account of the Rifle Brigade .. .. .	229 ..	1919

## GENERAL INDEX, VOLS. XXI. TO XXX. (YEARS 1910-1919.)

	PAGE	VOL.
Aldershot, 1910, 1st Prize Winners, 3rd Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> )	208	.. 1910
— 2nd Prize Winners, 3rd Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	210	.. 1910
Alexander, Boyd, Esq. ( <i>portrait</i> ) ..	43	.. 1910
— Memorial, Cranbrook, Kent, The ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	118	.. 1913
Any Complaints ..	312	.. 1918
Annuities for Meritorious Service ..	203	.. 1910
Argentine Cavalry, 1911 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	84	.. 1911
Assault-at-Arms, 2nd Battalion ..	132	.. 1914
Association of Hospital Visitors for Riflemen ..	197	.. 1916
Athletic Shield, 4th Battalion, Winners of Battalion, 1912 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	184	.. 1912
— Shield, "C" Company, 4th Battalion Winners of Battalion, 1907-8, 1910-12 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	127	.. 1914
Athletics (see Sports and Pastimes).		
BADAJOS Revisited : The Castle Walls from below ( <i>illustration</i> )	70	.. 1913
— Side of East end of Breach in La Trinidad ( <i>illustration</i> )..	70	.. 1913
— General View from the Covered Way of Advance of the Light Division ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	62	.. 1913
— General View from Summit of Walls stormed by the 3rd Division ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	62	.. 1913
— Right Flank of La Trinidad Bastion ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	64	.. 1913
— Portion of Right Face of La Trinidad Bastion ( <i>illustration</i> )	64	.. 1913
Barrosa, Field of (2nd Battalion Attack) ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	42	.. 1911
— (3rd Battalion Attack) ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	42	.. 1911
— Remains on Battlefield, March 1911 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	50	.. 1911
Bayonet Fighting, 1st Battalion ..	184	.. 1911
— 1st Battalion ..	162	.. 1912
— Team "C" Company, 1st Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	178	.. 1913
— Team "C" Company, 1st Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	178	.. 1913
— Competition, 1st Battalion, Winners (Home) 1912 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	162	.. 1912
— 2nd Battalion, Winners (India) 1912 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	166	.. 1912
Bolivian Boundary Commission, The ..	122	.. 1910
— II. The ..	169	.. 1911
— III. The ..	164	.. 1913
Bond, Captain, A. A. G. (obituary) ( <i>portrait</i> )..	266	.. 1911
Boom Platz, 1848, An Echo from ..	301	.. 1918
Bootle-Wilbraham, Hon. Villiers R. (obituary) ..	241	.. 1913
Borthwick, Lieutenant-Colonel C. T. (obituary) ..	171	.. 1914
Boxing (see Sports and Pastimes).		
— Team, 1st Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	178	.. 1913
Bradbury, Acting Sergeant, 1st Battalion ( <i>portrait</i> ) ..	205	.. 1911
Burman, Sergeant W. F., <i>W.C.</i> ..	49	.. 1917

	PAGE	VOL.
CALCUTTA, Departure of H.M. The King from, 2nd Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	127	1912
Calvert, Lieutenant J. D., 4th Battalion ( <i>portrait</i> ) .. .. .	130	1915
Campbell, Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. H. W. (obituary) .. .. .	265	1911
Canada, Reminiscences of Service in, with the 1st Battalion, 1862-70 .. .. .	89	1911
— Veterans of 1st Battalion in 1911 .. .. .	<i>Frontispiece</i>	1911
Canadian Militia, The, in 1911 .. .. .	57	1911
Carr Glyn, Lieutenant-General Sir J. P., K.C.B. .. .. .	<i>Frontispiece</i>	1912
— (obituary) .. .. .	251	1912
Casualties, amongst Officers of the Regiment (August—December, 1914) .. .. .	159	1914
Cates, 2nd Lieutenant G. E., V.C., 2nd Battalion .. .. .	49	1917
Club, The Rifle Brigade .. .. .	165	1914
“Commemorative Banners,” Mons to Ypres, 1914 .. .. .	40	1917
Commission, The Imperial War Graves .. .. .	308	1918
Commissions, 1 October 1914—31 December 1917, Roll of Warrant Officers and Non-Commissioned Officers of the Regular Battalions, granted .. .. .	45	1917
Congreve, Brevet-Major W. La T., V.C., D.S.O., M.C. .. .. .	125	1916
Cornelius, Sergeant-Major, 1st Battalion, Medals awarded to ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	117	1912
Corporals, 1st Battalion, 1913 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	160	1913
Costello, Edward, Medals and French Bullets ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	126	1910
— Medals of .. .. .	139	1916
Craufurd, Major-General Robert, Some Obscure Passages in the Life of .. .. .	16	1917
— Robert (in Hompesch's Regiment), about 1795 .. .. .	<i>Frontispiece</i>	1917
Cricket (see Sports and Pastimes).		
Cross-country Running, 1st Battalion .. .. .	149	1910
— Running, 3rd Battalion .. .. .	162	1910
Cup, 1st Battalion, Winners, Queen Victoria, A.R.A. 1909 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	184	1910
— 3rd Battalion, Winners of Smith-Dorrien ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	192	1910
— 3rd Battalion, Winners of Curragh Challenge ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	160	1911
Cups, Officers, 3rd Battalion, Winners of Musketry ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	114	1910
DANIELS, Company-Sergeant-Major H., V.C., 2nd Battalion .. .. .	123	1916
December, 1914, Waiting for an Attack, 1st Battalion .. .. .	<i>Frontispiece</i>	1914
— 1914, Outside a “Dug-out,” 1st Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	112	1914
— 1914, Regimental Uniform, 1st Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	137	1914
— 1914, Filling Sandbags for a Breast-work, 1st Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	146	1914
Delhi Durbar, 1911, The .. .. .	74	1912
M. Dillon, General Sir Martin, G.C.B., C.S.I. (obituary) .. .. .	247	1913
Drake, Corporal Alfred, V.C., 8th (Service) Battalion .. .. .	125	1916
Dramatic Club ( <i>illustration</i> ) (see Sports and Pastimes).		
Drum or Bugle Sling, of the Rifle Regiment ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	118	1911
EAGLE, Rifleman, 1st Battalion, Medals awarded to ( <i>illus- tration</i> ) .. .. .	117	1912
East Africa, A Journey in, 1911-12 .. .. .	81	1912
“1810” .. .. .	65	1910
“1811” .. .. .	43	1911
“1812” .. .. .	42	1912
“1813” .. .. .	43	1913
“1814” .. .. .	44	1914
“1815” .. .. .	41	1915
Expeditionary Force, Strength of Battalions on joining and of Reinforcements Despatched to 31 December, 1914 .. .. .	144	1914

	PAGE	VOL.
Extract from the Official Monthly Army List, January, 1911 ..	174 ..	1910
— from the Official Monthly Army List, January, 1912 ..	208 ..	1911
— from the Official Monthly Army List, January, 1913 ..	188 ..	1912
— from the Official Monthly Army List, January, 1914 ..	194 ..	1913
— from the Official Monthly Army List, January, 1915 ..	137 ..	1914
— from the Official Monthly Army List, January, 1916 ..	244 ..	1918
Extracts from Letters from the Front .. ..	113 ..	1914
FIGHTING LINE, 1915, Two Letters from the .. ..	302 ..	1918
Founder of the Rifle Corps, At the Tomb of the ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	105 ..	1912
Football (see Sports and Pastimes).		
— Team, 2nd Battalion, 1911 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	182 ..	1911
— Team, 3rd Battalion, 1910-11 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	188 ..	1911
— and Hockey Teams, 4th Battalion, 1911 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	196 ..	1911
— Teams, 3rd Battalion, 1911-12 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	172 ..	1912
GABLEY, Corporal, 4th Battalion ( <i>portrait</i> ) .. ..	198 ..	1911
Garrison Nursing Fund, Winchester .. ..	196 ..	1914
Glyn, Lieutenant-General, Sir J. P. C., K.C.B. ( <i>obituary</i> ) ..	251 ..	1912
— .. ..	Frontispiece	1912
Gough, Brigadier-General Sir John, V.C., K.C.B., C.M.G., A.D.C. ( <i>obituary</i> ) .. ..	67 ..	1915
— ( <i>portrait</i> ) .. ..	68 ..	1915
Green Jackets' Club, The: Its Origin and Progress .. ..	167 ..	1910
Greenjacket Meeting, Chelsea Pensioners of the Rifle Brigade and 60th Rifles, Winchester, 1913 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	192 ..	1913
— Week, Rifle Depot .. ..	191 ..	1913
HISTORY and Campaigns of the Rifle Brigade, Part I, 1800-1809 ..	144 ..	1912
— and Campaigns of the Rifle Brigade, Part II, 1809-1818 ..	218 ..	1919
Hockey (see Sports and Pastimes).		
Hounds, The Scarteen .. ..	156 ..	1912
Houstoun, Lieutenant-Colonel A., of the Rifle Corps, 1800, Memorial Tablet to ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	80 ..	1915
INDIA, in 1857, with the 2nd Battalion, To .. ..	57 ..	1910
Irish Rifles, The Royal .. ..	95 ..	1914
"JOHN," a True Record .. ..	8 ..	1917
KHARTOUM, Members of Sergeants' Mess, 4th Battalion, 1913 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	164 ..	1914
— Sergeants' Mess, 4th Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	152 ..	1912
Khojak Tunnel, The ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	84 ..	1910
King Edward VII. .. ..	Frontispiece	1910
— ( <i>obituary</i> ) .. ..	ix ..	1910
King-Salter, Lieutenant-Colonel H. P. ( <i>obituary</i> ) .. ..	228 ..	1910
King's African Rifles, With the ( <i>illustrations</i> ) .. ..	96 ..	1912
LEACH, Lieutenant-Colonel Jonathan, C.B., Memoir of ( <i>portrait</i> )	2 ..	1917
Letters to the Editor:		
— 1st Battalion, 1910 .. ..	98 ..	1910
— 2nd Battalion, 1910 .. ..	105 ..	1910
— 3rd Battalion, 1910 .. ..	110 ..	1910
— 4th Battalion, 1910 .. ..	115 ..	1910
— 1st Battalion, 1911 .. ..	138 ..	1911
— 2nd Battalion, 1911 .. ..	148 ..	1911
— 3rd Battalion, 1911 .. ..	158 ..	1911
— 4th Battalion, 1911 .. ..	164 ..	1911

	PAGE	VOL.
Letters to the Editor, 1st Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	117 ..	1912
— 2nd Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	127 ..	1912
— 3rd Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	133 ..	1912
— 4th Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	137 ..	1912
— 4th Battalion, Alexandria Detachment, 1912 .. .. .	140 ..	1912
— 1st Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	124 ..	1913
— 2nd Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	134 ..	1913
— 3rd Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	137 ..	1913
— 4th Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	145 ..	1913
— Sergeants, 1st Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	154 ..	1913
— Junior N.C.O.'s and Riflemen, 1st Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	159 ..	1913
— 2nd Battalion (India to England), 1914 .. .. .	98 ..	1914
— 4th Battalion (India to England), 1914 .. .. .	108 ..	1914
— 12th Service Battalion (Aldershot), 1914 .. .. .	110 ..	1914
— 1st Battalion (Mesopotamia), 1919 .. .. .	182 ..	1919
— 2nd Battalion (Aldershot), 1919 .. .. .	188 ..	1919
— 3rd Battalion (Portsmouth), 1919 .. .. .	200 ..	1919
— 4th Battalion (Quetta), 1919 .. .. .	207 ..	1919
Lyttelton Cup, 3rd Battalion, Winners of, 1911 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	240 ..	1911
MACHINE GUN Competition, 2nd Battalion, Winners, India, 1912 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	230 ..	1912
MacLachlan, Brigadier-General R. C., D.S.O. (obituary) ( <i>portrait</i> ) ..	49 ..	1917
Medal Collection, 1st Battalion, Key to .. .. .	Face	Frontispiece 1913
Medals, 1st Battalion, Collection of .. .. .		Frontispiece 1913
— 2nd Battalion Collection of .. .. .	129 ..	1910
— Awarded to Edward Costello ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	126 ..	1910
— Edward Costello's .. .. .	139 ..	1915
Memorial Brasses in the Cathedral, Winchester .. .. .	227 ..	1910
— Tablet to Lieutenant-Colonel A. Houstoun of The Rifle Corps, 1800 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	80 ..	1915
— Windows, Westminster Abbey ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	126 ..	1911
— The Agra ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	148 ..	1916
Military Display, Colchester, "The Arabs," 1st Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	160 ..	1913
Militia, The Canadian, in 1911 .. .. .	57 ..	1911
Miller, Bandmaster W., and Band, 1st Battalion, Edinburgh ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	94 ..	1914
Miller, Mr. William, Bandmaster of the 1st Battalion Rifle Brigade, 1842-1880, Some Reminiscences of .. .. .	70 ..	1915
Moore, Major-General Sir John, Model for Statue at Shorncliffe Camp .. .. .		Frontispiece 1915
— Sir John, Statue of .. .. .	89 ..	1915
Murmansk, the R.B. Platoon in .. .. .	232 ..	1919
Murree Hills, 2nd Battalion, Company Training, 1912 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	206 ..	1912
Musketry, 1st Battalion, 1910 .. .. .	204 ..	1910
— 2nd Battalion, 1910 .. .. .	207 ..	1910
— 3rd Battalion, 1910 .. .. .	207 ..	1910
— 3rd Battalion, 1910 .. .. .	219 ..	1910
— 4th Battalion, 1910 .. .. .	213 ..	1910
— Rifle Depôt, 1910 .. .. .	200 ..	1910
— 1st Battalion, 1911 .. .. .	247 ..	1911
— 3rd Battalion, 1911 .. .. .	253 ..	1911
— 4th Battalion, 1911 .. .. .	256 ..	1911
— Rifle Depôt, 1911 .. .. .	263 ..	1911
— 1st Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	224 ..	1912
— 2nd Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	229 ..	1912
— 3rd Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	231 ..	1912
— 4th Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	237 ..	1912

	PAGE	VOL.
Musketry, Rifle Depôt, 1912 .. .. .	245 ..	1912
— 1st Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	227 ..	1913
— 3rd Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	233 ..	1913
— 4th Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	235 ..	1913
— Rifle Depôt, 1913 .. .. .	238 ..	1913
— Trophies, 1912, 3rd Battalion (with Key) ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	136 ..	1912
NELSON, A Rifleman's Medal for Copenhagen, under ..	305 ..	1918
New Zealand, The Viceregal Household in 1913 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	78 ..	1913
— Rifle Brigade .. .. .	238 ..	1919
Noble, Acting Corporal C. R., V.C., 2nd Battalion .. ..	123 ..	1916
Note on Matter deleted by Censor .. .. .	91 ..	1915
Note on the "Student in Arms" and Lieutenant the Rev. W. N. Monteith .. .. .	200 ..	1916
Notes by the Editor, 1910 .. .. .	221 ..	1910
— 1911 .. .. .	131 ..	1911
— 1912 .. .. .	110 ..	1912
— 1913 .. .. .	121 ..	1913
— 1915 .. .. .	81 ..	1915
— 1917 .. .. .	32 ..	1917
— 1918 .. .. .	298 ..	1918
— 1919 .. .. .	264 ..	1919
OBITUARY, Adair, Captain Sir Frederick, <i>Bart.</i> .. ..	106 ..	1915
— <b>M.</b> Alexander, Lieutenant-Colonel B. F. .. ..	73 ..	1917
— Alexander, Boyd, Esq. ( <i>portrait</i> ) .. .. .	229 ..	1910
— Ames, Alfred, Esq. .. .. .	229 ..	1910
— <b>M.</b> Ames, Frederick, Esq. .. .. .	320 ..	1918
— <b>C.M.</b> Ansell, Sergeant Frederick .. .. .	261 ..	1912
— Annesley, Captain A. S. E. .. .. .	170 ..	1914
— <b>C.M.</b> Ayling, Private Rifleman Edward .. .. .	254 ..	1913
— <b>M.</b> Blackett, Major C. F. .. .. .	275 ..	1919
— <b>C.M.</b> Blane, Lieutenant-General Sir Seymour, <i>Bart.</i> , C.B. .. .. .	269 ..	1911
— Bond, Captain A. A. G. ( <i>portrait</i> ) .. .. .	266 ..	1911
— Borthwick, Lieutenant-Colonel A., M.V.O. .. ..	171 ..	1914
— Bootle-Wilbraham, Hon. Villiers R. .. .. .	241 ..	1913
— <b>C.</b> Bradford, General W. H. .. .. .	167 ..	1914
— <b>C.</b> Bramston, Lieutenant-Colonel T. H. .. ..	265 ..	1911
— Bunbury, Lieutenant-Colonel C. T. .. .. .	74 ..	1917
— Campbell, Captain A. C. .. .. .	281 ..	1919
— Campbell, Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. H. W. .. ..	265 ..	1911
— <b>C.</b> Cary, Colonel Lucius F. B. .. .. .	153 ..	1916
— <b>M.</b> Chamberlin, Lieutenant-Colonel E. H. .. ..	152 ..	1916
— Clanmorris, Lord .. .. .	156 ..	1916
— Clarke, Captain C. H. G. M., M.V.O. .. .. .	281 ..	1919
— <b>C.M.</b> Clerk, Colonel John, C.S.I., C.V.O. .. ..	275 ..	1919
— <b>C.</b> Clifton, Captain A. W. .. .. .	107 ..	1915
— <b>C.M.</b> Cochrane, Private Rifleman J. .. .. .	179 ..	1914
— Connaught, H.R.H. The Duchess of .. .. .	Frontispiece	1916
— Cowell, Captain A. V. J. .. .. .	104 ..	1915
— Crake, Major E. B. .. .. .	230 ..	1910
— Cranbrook, Earl of .. .. .	270 ..	1911
— Cuffe, Captain Hon. Otway .. .. .	248 ..	1912
— <b>M.</b> Curzon, Colonel G. A. .. .. .	256 ..	1912
— Deedes, Major-General W. H., D.S.O. .. ..	108 ..	1915
— Deedes, Major-General W. H., D.S.O. ( <i>a correction</i> ) ..	149 ..	1916
— De Mauley, Lord .. .. .	318 ..	1918
— <b>M.</b> Dillon, General Sir Martin, G.C.B., C.S.I. .. ..	247 ..	1913
— <b>M.</b> Dugdale, Colonel H. C. G. .. .. .	271 ..	1911

	PAGE	VOL.
Obituary, Dumaresq, Major H. W. . . . .	149	1916
----- Eccles, Captain, W. V. . . . .	152	1916
----- Edward VII, His Majesty, King . . . . .	272	1911
----- Edwards, Lieutenant-Colonel <i>Hon. C. E.</i> . . . .	254	1912
----- Huston, <i>Earl of</i> . . . . .	154	1916
----- Fitzgerald, Captain <i>Sir Maurice, Bart., C.V.O.</i> . . . .	109	1915
----- M. Fryer, Lieutenant-Colonel E. J. . . . .	157	1916
----- Gullwey, <i>Sir R. W. Frankland-Payne, Bart.</i> . . . .	251	1912
----- C.M. Glyn, Lieutenant-General <i>Sir J. P. C., K.C.B.</i> . . . .	150	1916
----- C. Glyn, Captain <i>Hon. Sidney Carr</i> . . . . .	105	1915
----- Gwydyr, Captain, <i>Lord</i> . . . . .	321	1918
----- Hammond, Lieutenant-Colonel W. W. . . . .	273	1911
----- C. Harington-Stuart, Captain R.E.S. . . . .	249	1912
----- C.M. Harvey, Lieutenant-Colonel H. . . . .	254	1912
----- Home, Captain <i>Hon. Cospatrick</i> . . . . .	259	1912
----- Hope-Johnstone, Captain J. J. . . . .	277	1919
----- Hutton, Surgeon-Major G. A. . . . .	228	1910
----- King-Salter, Lieutenant-Colonel H. P. . . . .	274	1919
----- Kinloch, Major-General A. A. A., <i>C.B.</i> . . . .	321	1918
----- Knight, Captain W. W. . . . .	228	1910
----- Knox, Major C. W. C. . . . .	246	1913
----- M. Lascelles, Lieutenant-Colonel H. A., <i>M.V.O.</i> . . . .	176	1914
----- C.M. Lindsay, Lieutenant-Colonel H. Gore . . . . .	245	1913
----- Lowndes, Major A. H. W. . . . .	103	1915
----- M. Lloyd-Anstruther, Lieutenant-Colonel R. H. . . . .	318	1918
----- Luttrell, Captain H. C. F. . . . .	104	1915
----- Maclean, Major-General H. J. . . . .	110	1915
----- Mansel, Colonel, J. D. . . . .	258	1912
----- Metcalfe, Major-General C. T. E., <i>C.B.</i> . . . .	278	1919
----- Montgomery, Colonel A. H. S. . . . .	70	1917
----- C. Muncaster, Captain <i>Lord</i> . . . . .	75	1917
----- Noel, Lieutenant-Colonel <i>Hon. E.</i> . . . .	255	1912
----- Oldfield, Captain G. B. R. . . . .	240	1913
----- (additional notes) . . . . .	255	1913
----- C. O'Neill, Sergeant James . . . . .	276	1919
----- Parke, C. E., <i>Esq.</i> . . . .	241	1913
----- C. Pennington, <i>Hon. Alan J.</i> . . . .	319	1918
----- Pemberton, Colonel A. R. . . . .	172	1914
----- C.M. Reade, Surgeon-Major-General <i>Sir J. B. C., K.C.B.</i> . . . .	72	1917
----- Russell, Alexander George, <i>Esq.</i> . . . .	255	1912
----- Savile, Captain J. H. D. . . . .	170	1914
----- Seymour, Major-General F. H. A. . . . .	151	1916
----- Sherston, Major C. D. . . . .	260	1912
----- C. Simmonds, Rifleman Cornelius James . . . . .	261	1912
----- M. Smith, Rifleman Godfrey . . . . .	156	1916
----- C.M. Stephens, Major-General A. H., <i>C.B.</i> . . . .	242	1913
----- M. Stewart, Major-General R. C., <i>C.B.</i> . . . .	240	1913
----- Swinhoe, Captain W. G. . . . .	174	1914
----- Teed, Major Edmund . . . . .	78	1917
----- Tighe, Captain E. K. B. . . . .	107	1915
----- Torphichen, Captain <i>Lord</i> . . . . .	253	1912
----- Tufnell-Tyrell, Captain J. L. . . . .	174	1914
----- Turnor, Christopher Hatton, <i>Esq.</i> . . . .	230	1910
----- Turnor, Major R. C. . . . .	243	1913
----- C.M. Warren, Major-General <i>Sir A., K.C.B.</i> . . . .	255	1913
----- C.M. Waterman, Private Rifleman James . . . . .	260	1912
----- M. White, Colour-Sergeant W. . . . .	177	1914
----- C. Wombwell, Lieutenant-General A. . . . .	253	1912
----- Woodhouse, Captain E. M. . . . .	104	1910
Officers, 1st Battalion, July, 1910 ( <i>illustration</i> ) . . . . .		

	PAGE	VOL.
Officers, 3rd Battalion, Winners of Musketry Cups, 1910 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	114 ..	1910
— Training Corps, Riflemen with, 1911 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	228 ..	1911
Osborne, Captain M. Godolphin, 3rd Battalion ( <i>portrait</i> ) ..	130 ..	1915
PALEY, Major George, General Staff Officer, 1st Division ( <i>portrait</i> ) .. .. .	92 ..	1915
Parade in Richmond Barracks, 1911, 1st Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> )	138 ..	1911
Past Officers of The Rifle Brigade, Roll of .. .. .	26 ..	1910
— The Rifle Brigade, Roll of .. .. .	26 ..	1911
— The Rifle Brigade, Roll of .. .. .	26 ..	1912
— The Rifle Brigade, Roll of .. .. .	26 ..	1913
— The Rifle Brigade, Roll of .. .. .	26 ..	1914
— The Rifle Brigade, Roll of .. .. .	26 ..	1915
Pemberton, Colonel A. R. ( <i>obituary</i> ) .. .. .	319 ..	1918
Phoenix Park, March Past in, 1st Battalion, 1911 ( <i>illustration</i> )	146 ..	1911
Point-to-Point Meeting, Regimental, 1910 .. .. .	147 ..	1910
— Races, Regimental, 1911 .. .. .	181 ..	1911
— Races, Regimental, 1912 .. .. .	155 ..	1912
— 1912, Regimental, Start of Heavy-weights ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	155 ..	1912
— Races, Regimental, 1913 .. .. .	171 ..	1913
Polo, 2nd Battalion (1909-10) .. .. .	151 ..	1910
— 4th Battalion .. .. .	163 ..	1910
— 2nd Battalion (1910-11) .. .. .	187 ..	1911
— 4th Battalion .. .. .	197 ..	1911
— 2nd Battalion (1912-13) .. .. .	181 ..	1913
— 2nd Battalion .. .. .	127 ..	1914
Pretor-Pinney, Lieutenant-Colonel C. F., D.S.O. ( <i>portrait</i> ) ..	81 ..	1917
Princess Patricia's Wedding Present .. .. .	298 ..	1918
Prittie, Captain Hon. F. R. D. ( <i>portrait</i> ) .. .. .	110 ..	1915
QUETTA, The Staff College ( <i>illustrations</i> ) .. .. .	80 ..	1910
Queen Victoria Cup, Winners of "A.R.A." 1909 ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	184 ..	1910
Queen's Cup, Ireland, 3rd Battalion, Winners of, 1911 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	218 ..	1911
RACING, 3rd Battalion 1910 .. .. .	160 ..	1910
Rear Guard, The ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	96 ..	1910
Record, 1st Battalion, 1910 .. .. .	184 ..	1910
— 2nd Battalion, 1910 .. .. .	188 ..	1910
— 3rd Battalion, 1910 .. .. .	191 ..	1910
— 4th Battalion, 1910 .. .. .	196 ..	1910
— Rifle Depôt, 1910 .. .. .	200 ..	1910
— 1st Battalion, 1911 .. .. .	218 ..	1911
— 2nd Battalion, 1911 .. .. .	224 ..	1911
— 3rd Battalion, 1911 .. .. .	227 ..	1911
— 4th Battalion, 1911 .. .. .	233 ..	1911
— Rifle Depôt, 1911 .. .. .	239 ..	1911
— 1st Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	198 ..	1912
— 2nd Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	202 ..	1912
— 3rd Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	207 ..	1912
— 4th Battalion, 1912 .. .. .	212 ..	1912
— Detachment 4th Battalion .. .. .	216 ..	1912
— Rifle Depôt, 1912 .. .. .	220 ..	1912
— 1st Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	204 ..	1913
— 2nd Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	209 ..	1913
— 3rd Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	213 ..	1913
— 4th Battalion, 1913 .. .. .	219 ..	1913
— Rifle Depôt .. .. .	223 ..	1913
— Notes on the Rifle Depôt .. .. .	224 ..	1913



	PAGE	VOL.
Record, Regimental, 1914 .. .. .	144 ..	1914
— Regimental, 1915 .. .. .	91 ..	1915
— Regimental, 1916-1918 .. .. .	244 ..	1918
— Regimental, 1919 .. .. .	241 ..	1919
Recreation Ground, The New, for the Rifle Depôt, Winchester	164 ..	1914
Regimental Badge, The .. .. .	306 ..	1918
— Birthday Sports, 2nd Battalion .. .. .	190 ..	1911
— History, The .. .. .	226 ..	1910
— Service, A very extended .. .. .	299 ..	1918
— State, 1 January, 1911 .. .. .	176 ..	1910
— State, 1 January, 1912 .. .. .	210 ..	1911
— State, 1 January, 1913 .. .. .	190 ..	1912
— State, 1 January, 1914 .. .. .	196 ..	1913
— State, 1 January, 1915 .. .. .	143 ..	1914
— State, 1 January, 1916 .. .. .	254 ..	1918
— State, 1 January, 1917 .. .. .	255 ..	1918
— State, 1 January, 1918 .. .. .	256 ..	1918
— State, 1 January, 1919 .. .. .	257 ..	1918
— State, 1 January, 1920 .. .. .	242 ..	1919
— Trophies and Relics.. .. .	118 ..	1911
Richmond Barracks, 1st Battalion, Parade in 1911 ( <i>illustration</i> )	138 ..	1911
“ Rifle Corps,” One of His Majesty’s .. .. .	76 ..	1915
Rifle, The Evolution of the .. .. .	90 ..	1914
Rifle Brigade, Chronicle, Twenty-one Years of the .. .. .	133 ..	1910
— Chronicle, Order Form for .. .. .	232 ..	1910
— Clothing Club .. .. .	98 ..	1917
— Clothing Guild, The .. .. .	195 ..	1914
— Clothing Guild, The .. .. .	198 ..	1916
— Clothing Guild, The .. .. .	344 ..	1918
— Club, The .. .. .	109 ..	1911
— Club, The .. .. .	165 ..	1914
— Club (Report of Committee Meetings) .. .. .	99 ..	1917
— History and Campaigns of the, Part I, 1800-1809 .. .. .	144 ..	1912
— — Part II, 1809-1913 .. .. .	218 ..	1919
— Ladies’ Guild, The .. .. .	346 ..	1918
— Memorials in Westminster Abbey .. .. .	127 ..	1911
— Brigade Museum, The .. .. .	347 ..	1918
— Prisoners of War Fund .. .. .	191 ..	1916
— Prisoners of War Fund .. .. .	95 ..	1917
— Prisoners of War Fund .. .. .	341 ..	1918
— Roll of Officers, 1910 .. .. .	177 ..	1910
— Roll of Officers, 1911 .. .. .	211 ..	1911
— Roll of Officers, 1912 .. .. .	191 ..	1912
— Roll of Officers, 1913 .. .. .	197 ..	1913
— Roll of Officers, 1914 .. .. .	146 ..	1914
— 1st and 2nd Battalions .. .. .	146 ..	1914
— 3rd and 4th Battalions .. .. .	147 ..	1914
— 5th (Reserve) Battalion .. .. .	148 ..	1914
— 6th (Reserve) Battalion .. .. .	149 ..	1914
— 7th (Service) Battalion .. .. .	151 ..	1914
— 8th (Service) Battalion .. .. .	152 ..	1914
— 9th (Service) Battalion .. .. .	153 ..	1914
— 10th and 11th (Service) Battalions .. .. .	154 ..	1914
— 12th (Service) Battalion .. .. .	155 ..	1914
— 13th (Service) Battalion .. .. .	156 ..	1914
— 14th and 15th (Service) Battalions .. .. .	157 ..	1914
— Roll of Past Officers, 1910 .. .. .	26 ..	1910
— Roll of Past Officers, 1911 .. .. .	26 ..	1911
— Roll of Past Officers, 1912 .. .. .	26 ..	1912
— Roll of Past Officers, 1913 .. .. .	26 ..	1913

	PAGE	VOL.
Rifle Brigade, Roll of Past Officers, 1914 .. .. .	26 ..	1914
— Roll of Past Officers, 1915 .. .. .	26 ..	1915
— Roll of Past Officers, 1916 .. .. .	26 ..	1916
— Short History of .. .. .	36 ..	1917
— Short Account of .. .. .	229 ..	1919
— New Zealand .. .. .	238 ..	1919
— War Workers .. .. .	315 ..	1918
Rifleman, Association of Hospital Visitors, for .. .. .	343 ..	1918
Rifle Regiment, Drum or Bugle Sling, of The ( <i>illustration</i> ) ..	118 ..	1911
Rifle Shooting, 3rd Battalion, First Prize Winners, Ireland, 1912 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. .. .	246 ..	1912
Russell, Alexander George, Esq. (obituary) .. .. .	72 ..	1917

## SPORTS and Pastimes :

— Regimental Point-to-Point Meeting, 1910 .. .. .	147 ..	1910
— Cricket, 1st Battalion .. .. .	148 ..	1910
— Football, 1st Battalion .. .. .	148 ..	1910
— Hockey, 1st Battalion .. .. .	149 ..	1910
— Cross-country Running .. .. .	149 ..	1910
— Polo (1909-10), 2nd Battalion .. .. .	151 ..	1910
— Football, 2nd Battalion .. .. .	152 ..	1910
— Hockey, 2nd Battalion .. .. .	154 ..	1910
— Athletics, Bergendal Sports, 2nd Battalion .. .. .	155 ..	1910
— Boxing, 2nd Battalion .. .. .	157 ..	1910
— Dramatic Club, 2nd Battalion .. .. .	159 ..	1910
— Racing, 3rd Battalion .. .. .	160 ..	1910
— Cricket, 3rd Battalion .. .. .	160 ..	1910
— Football, 3rd Battalion .. .. .	161 ..	1910
— Hockey, 3rd Battalion .. .. .	161 ..	1910
— Cross-country Running, 3rd Battalion .. .. .	162 ..	1910
— Boys' Games, &c., 3rd Battalion .. .. .	162 ..	1910
— Polo, 4th Battalion .. .. .	163 ..	1910
— Cricket, 4th Battalion .. .. .	164 ..	1910
— Boxing, 4th Battalion .. .. .	165 ..	1910
— Football, Rifle Depot .. .. .	166 ..	1910
— Regimental Point-to-Point Races, 1911 .. .. .	181 ..	1911
— Cricket, 1st Battalion .. .. .	182 ..	1911
— Football, 1st Battalion, 1910-11 .. .. .	182 ..	1911
— Hockey, 1st Battalion, 1910-11 .. .. .	183 ..	1911
— Boxing, 1st Battalion, 1910-11 .. .. .	184 ..	1911
— Bayonet Fighting, 1st Battalion .. .. .	184 ..	1911
— Athletics, 1st Battalion .. .. .	185 ..	1911
— Polo, 2nd Battalion, 1910-11 .. .. .	187 ..	1911
— Football, 2nd Battalion .. .. .	189 ..	1911
— Boxing, 2nd Battalion .. .. .	190 ..	1911
— Regimental Birthday Sports, 2nd Battalion .. .. .	190 ..	1911
— Battalion Sports, 2nd Battalion .. .. .	191 ..	1911
— Football, 3rd Battalion .. .. .	193 ..	1911
— Hockey, 3rd Battalion .. .. .	195 ..	1911
— Boxing and Gymnastic Club, 3rd Battalion .. .. .	196 ..	1911
— Polo, 4th Battalion .. .. .	197 ..	1911
— Cricket, 4th Battalion .. .. .	198 ..	1911
— Football and Hockey, 4th Battalion, 1910-11 .. .. .	199 ..	1911
— Boxing, 4th Battalion .. .. .	200 ..	1911
— Athletics and Swimming, 4th Battalion .. .. .	203 ..	1911
— Cricket, Rifle Depot .. .. .	205 ..	1911
— Football, Rifle Depot .. .. .	206 ..	1911
— Regimental Point-to-Point Races, 1912 .. .. .	155 ..	1912
— The Scarteen Hounds .. .. .	156 ..	1912
— Cricket, 1st Battalion .. .. .	157 ..	1912

	PAGE	VOL.
Sports and Pastimes, Football, 1st Battalion, 1911-1912 .. ..	158 ..	1912
— Athletic Sports, 1st Battalion .. ..	159 ..	1912
— Boxing, 1st Battalion .. ..	161 ..	1912
— Bayonet Fighting .. ..	162 ..	1912
— Dramatic Club .. ..	163 ..	1912
— Cricket, 2nd Battalion .. ..	164 ..	1912
— Football, 2nd Battalion .. ..	165 ..	1912
— Hockey, 2nd Battalion .. ..	165 ..	1912
— Athletic Sports, 2nd Battalion .. ..	166 ..	1912
— Cricket, 3rd Battalion .. ..	168 ..	1912
— Football, 3rd Battalion .. ..	168 ..	1912
— Athletic Sports, 3rd Battalion .. ..	170 ..	1912
— Dramatic Club, 3rd Battalion .. ..	173 ..	1912
— Cricket, 4th Battalion .. ..	174 ..	1912
— Football, 4th Battalion .. ..	175 ..	1912
— Hockey, 4th Battalion .. ..	176 ..	1912
— Athletic Sports, 4th Battalion .. ..	177 ..	1912
— Boxing and Physical Culture, 4th Battalion .. ..	183 ..	1912
— Dramatic Club, 4th Battalion .. ..	184 ..	1912
— Cricket, Rifle Depôt .. ..	184 ..	1912
— Football, Rifle Depôt .. ..	184 ..	1912
— Billiards, Rifle Depôt .. ..	185 ..	1912
— Regimental Point-to-Point Races, 1913 .. ..	171 ..	1913
— Cricket, 1st Battalion .. ..	173 ..	1913
— Football, 1st Battalion .. ..	174 ..	1913
— Athletic Sports, 1st Battalion .. ..	175 ..	1913
— Boxing, 1912-13, 1st Battalion .. ..	177 ..	1913
— Bayonet Fighting, 1st Battalion .. ..	179 ..	1913
— Dramatic Club, 1st Battalion .. ..	179 ..	1913
— Cricket, 2nd Battalion .. ..	180 ..	1913
— Polo, 2nd Battalion, 1912-13 .. ..	181 ..	1913
— Athletic Sports, 2nd Battalion .. ..	182 ..	1913
— Butterfly Collection Competition, 2nd Battalion .. ..	184 ..	1913
— Dramatic Club, 2nd Battalion .. ..	184 ..	1913
— Cricket, 3rd Battalion .. ..	185 ..	1913
— Football, 3rd Battalion .. ..	185 ..	1913
— Hockey, 3rd Battalion .. ..	186 ..	1913
— Boxing, 3rd Battalion .. ..	186 ..	1913
— Athletic Sports, 3rd Battalion .. ..	186 ..	1913
— Cricket, 4th Battalion .. ..	186 ..	1913
— Football, 4th Battalion .. ..	187 ..	1913
— Hockey, 4th Battalion .. ..	187 ..	1913
— Sports, 4th Battalion .. ..	187 ..	1913
— Boxing, 4th Battalion .. ..	189 ..	1913
— Billiards, 4th Battalion .. ..	189 ..	1913
— Cricket, Rifle Depôt .. ..	189 ..	1913
— Football, Rifle Depôt .. ..	190 ..	1913
— Greenjacket Week, Rifle Depôt .. ..	191 ..	1913
— Sergeants' Mess Notes, Rifle Depôt .. ..	192 ..	1913
— Polo, 2nd Battalion .. ..	127 ..	1914
— Cricket, 2nd Battalion .. ..	128 ..	1914
— Assault-at-Arms .. ..	132 ..	1914
Sports and Pastimes .. ..	147 ..	1916
Sailing under False Colours .. ..	310 ..	1918
Sandhurst, Memorial Chapel, Royal Military College .. ..	347 ..	1918
Sergeants' Mess Notes, Rifle Depôt .. ..	192 ..	1913
Service Abroad, Officers, W.O.s, N.C.O.s and Riflemen, who embarked for, in 1897, 2nd Battalion ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	232 ..	1913
Service Battalions, The K.R.R.C. and the Rifle Brigade Clothing Depôt .. ..	196 ..	1916

	PAGE	VOL.
Services, etc., of the 2nd Battalion during its Foreign Tour of Service, 1897-1914, Summary of .. ..	86	.. 1914
Services, etc., Summary of Services of 2nd Battalion during the War, November 1914—November 1918 .. ..	212	.. 1918
Short Account of the Rifle Brigade .. ..	229	.. 1918
Silver Tray, presented to Captain and Quartermaster W. Morrish ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	102	.. 1913
Smith-Dorrien Cup, Winners of ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	192	.. 1910
South American Republics, Some Notes on the .. ..	82	.. 1911
Staff, The Editor's .. ..	316	.. 1918
Staff College, Quetta ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	80	.. 1910
Standing Orders issued to the Light Division in the Peninsula during the years 1809-11, Appendix .. ..	159	.. 1915
TARIFA, General View ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	80	.. 1910
— Point where French Attacked ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	80	.. 1910
Thesiger, Major-General George H., C.B., C.M.G., A.D.C. ( <i>portrait</i> ) .. ..	40	.. 1915
Tomb of the Founder of the Rifle Corps ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	105	.. 1912
UGANDA Boundaries, The South Western, 1911-12 ( <i>illustrations</i> ) .. ..	59	.. 1912
Uniform, Regimental, 1st Battalion, December, 1914 ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	137	.. 1914
VANCOUVER Island, 1912 .. ..	69	.. 1912
Vera, Fight at the Bridge of, 1813 .. ..	113	.. 1913
Veterans of the 1st Battalion in Canada, 1911 .. ..	<i>Frontispiece</i>	1911
Veterans of the 1st Battalion Rifle Brigade at Hamilton, Canada, 1911, Roll of .. ..	175	.. 1911
Victoria Cross, Distribution of the, in Hyde Park, by Queen Victoria, Friday, June 26, 1857 .. ..	78	.. 1912
— 1915-16, The .. ..	123	.. 1916
— 1917, The .. ..	49	.. 1917
— Beesley, Rifleman W., V.C., 13th (Service) Battalion, .. ..	272	.. 1918
— Burman, Sergeant W. F., V.C., 16th (Service) Battalion .. ..	49	.. 1917
— Cates, 2nd Lieutenant G. E., V.C., 2nd Battalion .. ..	49	.. 1917
— Congreve, Brevet Major W. La T., V.C., D.S.O., M.C. .. ..	125	.. 1916
— Daniels, Company-Sergeant-Major H., V.C., 2nd Battalion .. ..	93	.. 1915
— Drake, Corporal Alfred, V.C., 8th (Service) Battalion .. ..	and 123	.. 1916
— Gregg, Sergeant W., V.C., 13th (Service) Battalion .. ..	125	.. 1916
— Noble, Acting-Corporal C. R., V.C., 2nd Battalion .. ..	271	.. 1918
— Woodall, Acting-Sergeant J. E., V.C., 1st Battalion .. ..	93	.. 1915
— Woodroffe, 2nd Lieutenant S. C., V.C., 8th (Service) Battalion .. ..	and 123	.. 1916
— Recipients of the, during the War .. ..	272	.. 1918
WHEATLEY, Rifleman, 1st Battalion, Medals awarded to ( <i>illustration</i> ) .. ..	124	.. 1916
Winchester Barracks, The Chapel .. ..	111	.. 1912
— Garrison Nursing Fund .. ..	257	.. 1913
— The New Recreation Ground for Rifle Depôt .. ..	196	.. 1914
Woodroffe, 2nd Lieutenant S. C., V.C., 8th (Service) Battalion .. ..	164	.. 1914
.. ..	124	.. 1916

## WAR RECORDS.

The following list of place-names, etc., may be found useful to those who may wish to refer to any particular Action or district. It is, of course, merely an outline of the Western theatre of War. Small-scale maps of the area dealt with in the accounts for the years 1914 to 1918 will be found at the end of the volumes for 1916 and 1918.

A Key-map with reference numbers of the Ordnance Sheets will be found at the end of this volume (1919).

	PAGE	VOL.
Aisne, Advance to, 1914 .. .. .	53, 87 ..	1916
„ 1918 .. .. .	126 ..	1919
Amiens, 1918 .. .. .	122 ..	1919
Armentières, 1914.. .. .	94 ..	1916
„ 1915-1916 .. .. .	16, 74 ..	1918
Arras, Battle of, 1917 .. .. .	21 ..	1919
„ German Attack on, 1917 .. .. .	59 ..	1919
Boesinghe, 1916 .. .. .	27 ..	1918
Fromelles, Action of, 1915 .. .. .	56 ..	1918
Laventie, etc., 1914 .. .. .	74 ..	1916
Le Cateau, Action of, 1914.. .. .	43 ..	1916
Liquid Fire Attack, 1915 .. .. .	136 ..	1918
Loos, Battle of, 1915 .. .. .	67 ..	1918
Marne, Retreat to, 1914 .. .. .	48 ..	1916
„ Battle of the, 1914.. .. .	54, 87 ..	1916
Messines, 1917 .. .. .	144 ..	1919
Neuve Chapelle, 1915 .. .. .	48 ..	1918
Passchendaele, 1917 .. .. .	148 ..	1919
Ploegsteert Wood, 1914-1915 .. .. .	64, 1916 and 10, 352 (map)	1918
St. Eloi, Action of, 1915 .. .. .	88 ..	1918
St. Omer and Ypres, Armentières, La Bassée, General Map of Country between .. .. .	at end of 1916 and 1918	
Somme, Battle of the, 1916 .. .. .	5, 45, 97 ..	1919
„ 1917 .. .. .	106, 151 ..	1919
Vadencourt (Retirement), 1918 .. .. .	153 ..	1919
Ypres, 1916 .. .. .	18, 110, 1918 and 8, 37,	1919
„ Second Battle of, 1915 .. .. .	19, 93 ..	1918

## RECORDS OF REGULAR BATTALIONS, 1914-18:

1st Battalion, 1914 .. .. .	41 ..	1916
„ 1914 .. .. .	10 ..	1918
„ 1915 .. .. .	16 ..	1918
„ 1916 .. .. .	1 ..	1919
„ 1917 .. .. .	20 ..	1919
„ 1918 .. .. .	52 ..	1919
2nd Battalion, 1914 .. .. .	74 ..	1916
„ 1915 .. .. .	44 ..	1918
„ 1916 .. .. .	97 ..	1919
„ 1917 .. .. .	106 ..	1919
„ 1918 .. .. .	118 ..	1919
3rd Battalion, 1914 .. .. .	86 ..	1916
„ 1915 .. .. .	74 ..	1918
„ 1916 .. .. .	180 ..	1919
„ 1917 .. .. .	140 ..	1919
„ 1918 .. .. .	153 ..	1919
4th Battalion, 1914 .. .. .	104 ..	1916
„ 1915 .. .. .	86 ..	1918
„ 1916 .. .. .	173 ..	1919
„ 1917 .. .. .	175 ..	1919
„ 1918 .. .. .	177 ..	1919

## RECORDS OF "SERVICE" BATTALIONS, 1915:

	PAGE	VOL.
7th Battalion, 1915 .. .. .	111	1918
8th " 1915 .. .. .	124	1918
" " 1915 .. .. .	129	1918
9th " 1915 .. .. .	152	1918
10th " 1915 .. .. .	166	1918
11th " 1915 .. .. .	178	1918
12th " 1915 .. .. .	183	1918
13th " 1915 .. .. .	197	1918

## CASUALTIES, 1914-1918.

(1) *Killed or Died of Wounds—*

Roll of Officers of The Rifle Brigade reported during the year 1916 .. .. .	187	1916
Officers and other Ranks, <i>Regular</i> Battalions, August 1914 to 31 December 1915 .. .. .	203	1918
Officers and other Ranks, <i>Service</i> Battalions, June 1915 to 31 December 1915 .. .. .	204	1918
Officers and other Ranks, <i>Regular</i> and <i>Service</i> Battalions, during 1916 .. .. .	258	1918
Officers and other Ranks, <i>Regular</i> and <i>Service</i> Battalions, during 1917 .. .. .	259	1918
Officers and other Ranks, <i>Regular</i> and <i>Service</i> Battalions, during 1918 .. .. .	260	1918
Total Number of Officers and other Ranks, <i>Regular</i> and <i>Service</i> Battalions, Killed or Died of Wounds during the whole War .. .. .	261	1918

(2) *Sent Home Sick or Wounded—*

Officers and other Ranks, <i>Regular</i> Battalions, during 1914-15 .. .. .	205	1918
Officers and other Ranks, <i>Service</i> Battalions, during 1915 .. .. .	206	1918
Total Number W.O.s, N.C.O.s and Riflemen, <i>Regular</i> Battalions, during 1918 .. .. .	261	1918
Total Number W.O.s, N.C.O.s and Riflemen, <i>Service</i> Battalions, during 1915-18 .. .. .	262	1918
Total Number W.O.s, N.C.O.s and Riflemen from <i>all</i> Battalions sent Home Sick or Wounded, 1914-18 .. .. .	262	1918

## STRENGTHS AND REINFORCEMENTS.

Strength of <i>Regular</i> Battalions on Embarkation and Reinforcements to 31 December 1914 .. .. .	144	1914
Reinforcements to <i>Regular</i> Battalions from 1 January to 31 December 1915.. .. .	207	1918
Strength of the <i>Service</i> Battalions on Embarkation and Reinforcements to 31 December 1915 .. .. .	211	1918
Reinforcements to <i>Regular</i> and <i>Service</i> Battalions during 1916, 1917 and 1918 .. .. .	263	1918
Total Number of W.O.s, N.C.O.s and Riflemen of <i>all</i> Battalions sent Abroad during 1914-18 .. .. .	266	1918
Increase and Decrease, Rifle Brigade, August 1914 to December 1918 .. .. .	267	1918
Increase and Decrease, Rifle Brigade, January to 31 December 1919 .. .. .	246	1919

## REGIMENTAL ROLLS, &amp;c.

	PAGE	VOL.
A Regimental Roll, 1914-15 .. .. .	222 ..	1918
Showing: (1) Officers' Casualties.		
(2) Officers "mentioned," &c.		
(3) W.O.s, N.C.O.s or Riflemen "mentioned."		
Commanding Officers of Regiment, 1 January 1918 ..	268 ..	1918
C.O.s, Adjutants and Quartermasters, 31 December 1918	269 ..	1918
C.O.s, Adjutants and Quartermasters, 31 December, 1919	247 ..	1919
Officers employed on the Staff, 1915 .. .. .	216 ..	1918
Officers extra-Regimentally employed, 1 January 1920 ..	248 ..	1918

## SPECIAL DECORATIONS :

Honours and Rewards, August—December 1914 (Officers, N.C.O.s and Riflemen) .. .. .	162 ..	1914
Roll of W.O.s, N.C.O.s and Riflemen awarded Special Decorations up to 7 December 1915 .. .. .	93 ..	1915
" " " " up to 11 December 1916 .. .. .	105 ..	1916
" " " " 28 December 1917 .. .. .	51 ..	1917
" " " " December 1918 .. .. .	271 ..	1918
" " " " December 1919 .. .. .	254 ..	1919
Victoria Cross, Recipients, 1915 .. .. .	103 ..	1915
" " " 1916 .. .. .	125 ..	1916
" " " 1917 .. .. .	49 ..	1917
" " " 1918 .. .. .	271 ..	1918
Military Cross, Recipients, 1915 .. .. .	93 ..	1915
" " " 1916 .. .. .	106 ..	1916
Bar to Distinguished Conduct Medal, 1918 .. .. .	273 ..	1918
" " " " " 1919 .. .. .	254 ..	1919
Distinguished Conduct Medal, Recipients, 1915 .. .. .	94 ..	1915
" " " " 1916 .. .. .	107 ..	1916
" " " " 1917 .. .. .	53 ..	1917
" " " " 1918 .. .. .	274 ..	1918
" " " " 1919 .. .. .	255 ..	1919
Bar to Military Medal, Recipients, 1917 .. .. .	61 ..	1917
" " " " 1918 .. .. .	286 ..	1918
Military Medal, Recipients, 1916 .. .. .	117 ..	1916
" " " 1917 .. .. .	61 ..	1917
" " " 1918 .. .. .	286 ..	1918
" " " 1919 .. .. .	259 ..	1919
Meritorious Service Medal, Recipients, 1916 .. .. .	117 ..	1916
" " " " 1917 .. .. .	68 ..	1917
" " " " 1918 .. .. .	294 ..	1918
" " " " 1919 .. .. .	260 ..	1919
Foreign Decorations, Recipients, 1914 .. .. .	168 ..	1914
" " " 1915 .. .. .	102 ..	1915
" " " 1916 .. .. .	122 ..	1916
" " " 1917 .. .. .	69 ..	1917
" " " 1918 .. .. .	295 ..	1918
" " " 1919 .. .. .	260 ..	1919

## ROLL OF HONOUR (OBITUARY NOTICES) :

NOTE.—Names of Officers who do not appear in this Roll, will be found in the Casualty Lists for the years, as follows:—

	PAGE	VOL.
Year 1914-15 .. .. .	171 ..	1916
1916 .. .. .	187 ..	1916
1917 .. .. .	91 ..	1917
1918 .. .. .	337 ..	1918

## Obituary Notices :—

	PAGE	VOL.
— Alexander, Lieutenant-Colonel R. . . . .	193 ..	1914
— Armstrong, 2nd Lieutenant E. W. . . . .	133 ..	1915
— Balleine, T/Captain C. F. . . . .	151 ..	1915
— Banbury, Captain W. M. V. . . . .	85 ..	1917
— Barclay, Major G. W. . . . .	180 ..	1916
— Beevor, Capt. W. H. . . . .	176 ..	1916
— Benson, T/Lieutenant H. E. . . . .	154 ..	1915
— Blades, 2nd Lieutenant L. T. . . . .	119 ..	1915
— Blair-Oliphant, Lieutenant-Colonel P. L. K., <i>D.S.O.</i>	328 ..	1918
— Blair, 2nd Lieutenant P. C. B. . . . .	120 ..	1915
— Blunden, T/Captain O. . . . .	184 ..	1916
— Boden, Major A. D. . . . .	324 ..	1918
— Bonser, Temp. Captain W. J. . . . .	157 ..	1915
— Boswell, Lieutenant G. W. K. . . . .	180 ..	1916
— Bourns, Lieutenant C. . . . .	165 ..	1916
— Bradley, Lieutenant G. M. . . . .	144 ..	1915
— Brandt, Lieutenant D. R. . . . .	119 ..	1915
— Buller, Lieutenant-Colonel H. C., <i>D.S.O.</i> , <i>M.V.O.</i>	174 ..	1916
— Burnell, Captain A. C. . . . .	173 ..	1916
— Burton, Captain Robert Cecil . . . . .	122 ..	1915
— Butterworth, T/2nd Lieutenant H. M. . . . .	155 ..	1915
— Buxton, Captain A. B. . . . .	82 ..	1917
— Cable, 2nd Lieutenant G. P. . . . .	127 ..	1915
— Calvert, Lieutenant J. D. . . . .	134 ..	1915
— Carmichael, T/Captain D. . . . .	155 ..	1915
— Cartland, Captain G. T. . . . .	177 ..	1916
— Cates, 2nd Lieutenant G. E., <i>V.C.</i> . . . . .	49 ..	1917
— Chapman, Lieutenant L. V. . . . .	130 ..	1915
— Cholmondeley, Captain R. . . . .	140 ..	1915
— Clarke, 2nd Lieutenant A. G. . . . .	178 ..	1916
— Clarke, 2nd Lieutenant H. P. . . . .	126 ..	1915
— Coates, T/2nd Lieutenant B. M. . . . .	156 ..	1915
— Cobbold, Lieutenant R. H. W. . . . .	128 ..	1915
— Collins, T/Captain P. . . . .	150 ..	1915
— Congreve, Major W. La T., <i>V.C.</i> , <i>D.S.O.</i> , <i>M.C.</i>	178 ..	1916
— Cullis, T/2nd Lieutenant H. T. . . . .	170 ..	1916
— Cunliffe, T/Major Sir F. H. E., <i>Bart.</i>	185 ..	1916
— Daniell, 2nd Lieutenant A. S. L. . . . .	117 ..	1915
— Davies, 2nd Lieutenant G. Ll. . . . .	166 ..	1916
— Dawnay, Major Hon. H., <i>D.S.O.</i> . . . . .	188 ..	1914
— Denison, T/2nd Lieutenant G. E. H. . . . .	158 ..	1915
— Drake, Corporal A. F., <i>V.C.</i> . . . . .	123 ..	1916
— Drummond, Captain S. H. . . . .	139 ..	1915
— Durrant, 2nd Lieutenant W. B. W. . . . .	137 ..	1915
— Dyer, 2nd Lieutenant C. M. . . . .	137 ..	1915
— Egerton-Green, Captain J. W. . . . .	86 ..	1917
— Fitzherbert-Brockholes, Captain T. J. . . . .	121 ..	1915
— Fortescue, Captain G. . . . .	144 ..	1915
— Fosdick, T/Lieutenant J. H. . . . .	150 ..	1915
— Frere, T/Lieutenant, G. R. . . . .	169 ..	1916
— Garrard, T/2nd Lieutenant C. S. . . . .	170 ..	1916
— Gibbs, 2nd Lieutenant B., <i>M.C.</i> . . . . .	161 ..	1916
— Gilbey, Lieutenant E. . . . .	123 ..	1915
— Gilliat, Captain O. C. S. . . . .	186 ..	1914
— Gorell-Barnes, Captain C. R., <i>D.S.O.</i> , <i>M.C.</i>	333 ..	1918
— Gough, Brigadier-General Sir John E., <i>V.C.</i> , <i>K.C.B.</i> , <i>C.M.G.</i> , <i>A.D.C.</i> . . . . .	113 ..	1915
— Grenfell, T/2nd Lieutenant Hon. G. W. . . . .	167 ..	1916
— Gull, Major F. W. L. . . . .	335 ..	1918



Obituary Notices (*continued*):—

	PAGE	VOL.
— Halstead, T/Lieutenant A. F. .. ..	170 ..	1916
— Hardinge, 2nd Lieutenant <i>Hon.</i> H. R. .. ..	128 ..	1915
— Hardy, T/Captain A. M. .. ..	149 ..	1915
— Hargreaves, Captain A. K. .. ..	133 ..	1915
— Hargreaves, Captain A. K., <i>D.S.O.</i> (addendum) .. ..	159 ..	1916
— Harman, Major G. M. N., <i>D.S.O.</i> .. ..	190 ..	1914
— Harrison, Major C. E. .. ..	121 ..	1915
— Helyar, Captain M. H. .. ..	118 ..	1915
— Henderson, Captain and Adjutant T. H., <i>M.C.</i> .. ..	87 ..	1917
— Herbert-Smith, Lieutenant V. .. ..	163 ..	1916
— Hoste, 2nd Lieutenant <i>Sir</i> W. G., <i>Bart.</i> .. ..	325 ..	1918
— Hunt, Captain C. F. .. ..	129 ..	1915
— Hunter, Captain T. V. .. ..	89 ..	1917
— Isaac, Captain H. E. V., <i>D.S.O.</i> .. ..	125 ..	1915
— Jackson, Captain G. L. .. ..	80 ..	1917
— Jenkinson, Captain J. B. .. ..	183 ..	1914
— Jukes, 2nd Lieutenant G. F. .. ..	162 ..	1916
— Kennedy, Captain J. P. F. .. ..	334 ..	1918
— Kennedy, Captain P. A. .. ..	124 ..	1915
— Keppel, 2nd Lieutenant <i>Hon.</i> A. E. G. A. .. ..	83 ..	1917
— King, Major A. M. .. ..	132 ..	1915
— Knight, T/Lieutenant A. C. .. ..	158 ..	1915
— Knights-Smith, T/2nd Lieutenant, B. A. .. ..	157 ..	1915
— Laudale, Lieutenant D. B. .. ..	185 ..	1914
— Large, T/Captain H. E. .. ..	156 ..	1915
— Lascelles, 2nd Lieutenant J. F., <i>M.C.</i> .. ..	166 ..	1916
— Ledger, Lieutenant R. K. .. ..	146 ..	1915
— Leeke, Captain R. H. .. ..	140 ..	1915
— Leigh, Lieutenant E. H. .. ..	162 ..	1916
— Leslie, Captain N. J. B. .. ..	187 ..	1914
— Leyland, Lieutenant-Colonel R. H. .. ..	336 ..	1918
— MacLachlan, Brigadier-General R. C., <i>D.S.O.</i> .. ..	84 ..	1917
— Marriott, T/2nd Lieutenant F. E. .. ..	149 ..	1915
— Marriott, T/2nd Lieutenant H. D. .. ..	153 ..	1915
— Mason, Lieutenant, R. S. .. ..	123 ..	1915
— Maxwell, Lieutenant-Colonel J. W., <i>D.S.O.</i> , <i>M.C.</i> .. ..	88 ..	1917
— McAfee, T/Lieutenant L. A. .. ..	152 ..	1915
— Meysey-Thompson, Captain <i>Hon.</i> C. H. .. ..	132 ..	1915
— Milward, T/Captain P. H. .. ..	150 ..	1915
— Monteith, Lieutenant <i>Rev.</i> W. N. .. ..	163 ..	1916
— Morgan-Grenville, Captain <i>Hon.</i> R. G. G. .. ..	192 ..	1914
— Morris, Lieutenant-Colonel <i>Hon.</i> G. H. .. ..	182 ..	1914
— Morris, Lieutenant-Colonel T. H. P., <i>M.C.</i> .. ..	175 ..	1916
— Mostyn-Pryce, Captain H. B. .. ..	135 ..	1915
— Noble, Actg/Corporal C. R., <i>V.C.</i> .. ..	93 ..	1915
— Oldfield, T/Captain L. C. F. .. ..	169 ..	1916
— Osborne, Captain M. Godolphin .. ..	130 ..	1915
— Paley, Major George .. ..	184 ..	1914
— Parker, Captain W. M. .. ..	138 ..	1915
— Pascoe, Captain B. C., <i>M.C.</i> .. ..	335 ..	1918
— Pawle, T/Captain B. .. ..	167 ..	1916
— Penn, 2nd Lieutenant G. M. .. ..	146 ..	1915
— Percival, Major C. V. N. .. ..	185 ..	1914
— Perssé, 2nd Lieutenant R. A. .. ..	145 ..	1915
— Peyton, Lieutenant-Colonel H. S. C., <i>M.C.</i> .. ..	327 ..	1918
— Pigot-Moodie, 2nd Lieutenant C. A. .. ..	145 ..	1915
— Pilcher, Lieutenant T. P. .. ..	124 ..	1915
— Powell, T/2nd Lieutenant P. .. ..	168 ..	1916
— Pretor-Pinney, Lieutenant-Colonel C. F., <i>D.S.O.</i> .. ..	81 ..	1917

Obituary Notices (*continued*):—

	PAGE	VOL.
— Prideaux-Brune, 2nd Lieutenant E. N. .. ..	334 ..	1918
— Prittie, Captain <i>Hon.</i> F. R. D. .. ..	191 ..	1914
— Purvis, T/Captain J. R. .. ..	155 ..	1915
— Radcliffe, Lieutenant-Colonel C. E., <i>D.S.O.</i> ..	159 ..	1916
— Raikes, 2nd Lieutenant F. S. W. .. ..	127 ..	1915
— Raymond-Barker, T/2nd Lieutenant C. L. ..	169 ..	1916
— Renwick, Lieutenant T. B. .. ..	147 ..	1915
— Rickman, Major S. H. .. ..	180 ..	1914
— Rissik, T/Lieutenant B. .. ..	168 ..	1916
— Ritchie, 2nd Lieutenant T. P. A. .. ..	134 ..	1915
— Roduey, 2nd Lieutenant <i>Hon.</i> F. W. .. ..	141 ..	1915
— Roe, T/Captain F. E. M. ... ..	183 ..	1916
— Rogers, T/Captain R. S. .. ..	171 ..	1916
— Round, Captain H.C., <i>D.S.O.</i> , <i>M.C.</i> .. ..	86 ..	1917
— Russell, Captain L. C. B. ... ..	181 ..	1916
— Scholey, T/Captain C. H. N. .. ..	154 ..	1915
— Scott, Captain H. V. .. ..	138 ..	1915
— Scrimgeour, T/Lieutenant M. .. ..	152 ..	1915
— Selby-Smith, Captain M. B. .. ..	136 ..	1915
— Sheridan, Lieutenant W. F. .. ..	129 ..	1915
— Sherston, Captain S. A., <i>M.C.</i> .. ..	126 ..	1915
— Smith, T/Captain G. W. .. ..	184 ..	1916
— Stanhope, 2nd Lieutenant T. F. E. .. ..	127 ..	1915
— Stewart, Lieutenant J. A. L. .. ..	120 ..	1915
— Stewart, Lieutenant-Colonel, W. R., <i>D.S.O.</i> , <i>M.C.</i> ..	330 ..	1918
— Stobart, 2nd Lieutenant J. G. .. ..	134 ..	1915
— Talbot, T/Lieutenant G. W. L. .. ..	149 ..	1915
— Tennyson, Captain <i>Hon.</i> A. A. .. ..	327 ..	1918
— Thesiger, Major-General G. H., <i>C.B.</i> , <i>C.M.G.</i> , <i>A.D.C.</i> ..	112 ..	1915
— Thornton, Major N. S. .. ..	332 ..	1918
— Torry, T/2nd Lieutenant J. S. A. .. ..	157 ..	1915
— Toynbee, Captain G. P. R. .. ..	189 ..	1914
— Trevelyan, 2nd Lieutenant W. .. ..	133 ..	1915
— Trotter, 2nd Lieutenant K. S. .. ..	161 ..	1916
— Tryon, Captain R. .. ..	142 ..	1915
— Tryon, T/Captain H. .. ..	186 ..	1916
— Turner, Lieutenant A. W. W. .. ..	130 ..	1915
— Turner, Captain B. A., <i>D.S.O.</i> .. ..	186 ..	1914
— Tyrwhitt-Drake, 2nd Lieutenant, T. V. .. ..	79 ..	1917
— Vernède, 2nd Lieutenant R. E. .. ..	79 ..	1917
— Vincent, 2nd Lieutenant C. A. .. ..	165 ..	1915
— Walker, T/2nd Lieutenant A. T. .. ..	153 ..	1915
— Wallace, 2nd Lieutenant W. M. .. ..	142 ..	1915
— Ward, Major J. S. .. ..	143 ..	1915
— Wegg-Prosser, T/2nd Lieutenant C. F. .. ..	185 ..	1916
— Werner, Captain C. A. .. ..	162 ..	1916
— Whitaker, Captain H. .. ..	190 ..	1914
— Williams, T/2nd Lieutenant H. E. E. .. ..	156 ..	1915
— Willoughby, T/Captain F. G. G. .. ..	168 ..	1916
— Wilson, 2nd Lieutenant A. H. .. ..	118 ..	1915
— Winch, 2nd Lieutenant E. M. .. ..	131 ..	1915
— Wollaston, Lieutenant-Colonel F. H., <i>D.S.O.</i> ..	326 ..	1918
— Wolseley-Jenkins, Captain C. W. .. ..	164 ..	1916
— Wood, Lieutenant-Colonel D. .. ..	177 ..	1916
— Wood, 2nd Lieutenant W. .. ..	165 ..	1916
— Woodroffe, Lieutenant K. H. C. .. ..	147 ..	1915
— Woodroffe, T/Captain L., <i>M.C.</i> .. ..	182 ..	1916
— Woodroffe, T/2nd Lieutenant S. C., <i>V.C.</i> ..	153, 1915 and 124,	1916



## BOOKS DEALING WITH THE RIFLE BRIGADE ISSUED DURING THE LAST 30 YEARS.

---

**THE FIRST BRITISH RIFLE CORPS**, being the story of the raising of the Rifle Corps in 1800, and its subsequent conversion into the 95th Rifles in 1803, and Rifle Brigade in 1816. By Capt. WILLOUGHBY VERNER.

Crown 8vo, 149 pp., with Coloured Frontispiece of a Rifle Officer in 1812. (Published 1890.) Price 5/6, post free.

---

**MILITARY LECTURES DELIVERED TO THE OFFICERS OF THE 95th (Rifle Regiment) at Shorn-cliff Barracks, Kent, during the Spring of 1803.** By COOTE MANNINGHAM, Colonel of the 95th (Rifle Regiment).

Demy 8vo, 47 pp. Published 1803. Reprinted (with an introduction by Lt.-Colonel W. VERNER), 1896. Price 2/6 post free.

---

**REGULATIONS FOR THE RIFLE CORPS** formed at Blatchington Barracks under the command of Colonel MANNINGHAM, 25th August, 1800.

Demy 8vo, 80 pp. Published 1801. Reprinted (with an introduction by Lt.-Colonel W. VERNER), 1897. Price 2/6, post free.

---

**A BRITISH RIFLE MAN**; being the Journals and Correspondence of Major George Simmons during the Peninsular War and Waterloo Campaign. By Lt.-Colonel WILLOUGHBY VERNER. Crown 8vo, 386 pp., and 3 Maps. Published 1899. Price 7/6, post free.

---

**STANDING ORDERS** as given out and enforced by the late Major-General ROBT. CRAUFURD for the use of the LIGHT DIVISION during the years 1809-10-11.

Demy 8vo, 39 pp. Published 1814. Reprinted (with note by Col. W. VERNER), 1915. Price 2/6, post free.

**HISTORY OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE, PART I (1800 to 1809)**

by Colonel WILLOUGHBY VERNER.

Demy 4to, 236 pp. 5 photogravures, 5 Coloured plates, 10 other plates and 12 Maps and Plans. Published 1912. Price £1 11s. 6d. net.

---

**A SHORT HISTORY OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE,** by Capt.

H. G. PARKYN, with an Introduction by Colonel W. VERNER.

Demy 8vo, 49 pp. and Frontispiece. Published 1917. Price 3/6, post free.

---

**HISTORY OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE, PART II (1809 to 1813),**

by Colonel WILLOUGHBY VERNER.

Demy 4to, 514 pp. With Photogravure of Field Marshal the Marquis of Wellington, 3 Coloured plates, 4 other plates and 16 Maps and Plans. Published 1919. Price 42/- net.

---

**A SHORT ACCOUNT OF THE RIFLE BRIGADE,** by Colonel WILLOUGHBY VERNER.

16mo, 36 pp. Coloured Frontispiece and Map of the World showing where Regiment has fought. Published 1920. Price 1/3, post free, or 12/- the dozen.

---

**THE RIFLE BRIGADE CHRONICLE.** Being the "Annual" of the Regiment, commencing in 1890. Thirty volumes issued, 1890-1919. Compiled and Edited by Colonel WILLOUGHBY VERNER. Price: for complete set of volumes, £15 15s.

Single volumes can be obtained from the Publisher at prices varying from 3/6 to 12/6 according to year of issue.

Index for preceding ten years issues are contained in the volumes for 1899, 1909 and 1919. (Volumes for 1891, '93, '94, '95, '98 and 1910 are out of print.)





UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN



3 9015 06277 2861



